Contents

A-Z

BMW M

The Ultimate Driving Machine®

THE BMW M2 COUPE.

OWNER'S MANUAL.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

M2 Owner's Manual for the vehicle

Thank you for choosing a BMW M2.

The more familiar you are with your vehicle, the better control you will have on the road. We therefore strongly suggest:

Read this Owner's Manual before starting off in your new BMW M2. Also use the Integrated Owner's Manual in your vehicle. It contains important information on vehicle operation that will help you make full use of the technical features available in your BMW M2. The manual also contains information designed to enhance operating reliability and road safety, and to contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW M2.

Any updates made after the editorial deadline can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

You can find supplementary information in the additional brochures in the onboard literature.

We wish you a safe and enjoyable ride.

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app. Additional information on the Internet:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

© 2017 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts, only with the written
consent of BMW AG, Munich.
US English ID5 VI/17, 07 17 490
Printed on environmentally friendly paper, bleached
without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Contents

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic or item is by using the index, refer to page 236.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals: Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle, Online Owner's Manual, BMW Driver's Guide App.

6 Information

At a glance

16 Cockpit
20 iDrive
29 Voice activation system
32 General settings
45 Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Controls

50 Opening and closing
67 Settings
79 Transporting children safely
84 Driving
99 Displays
112 Lights
117 Safety
135 Driving stability control systems
140 Driving comfort
148 Climate control
157 Interior equipment
165 Storage compartments

Driving tips

172 BMW M2 Technology
173 Things to remember when driving
177 Loading
180 Saving fuel

Mobility

184 Refueling
186 Fuel
188 Wheels and tires
202 Engine compartment
204 Engine oil
208 Coolant
210 Maintenance
212 Replacing components
218 Breakdown assistance
225 Care

Reference

232 Technical data
234 Appendix
236 Everything from A to Z

Information

Using this Owner's Manual

Orientation

The fastest way to find information on a particular topic is by using the index.

An initial overview of the vehicle is provided in the first chapter.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver’s Guide app.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication

The Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be obtained as printed book from the service center.

The topics of Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication can be called up via the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual on the Control Display in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver’s Guide app.

Additional sources of information

Dealer’s service center

A dealer’s service center will be glad to answer questions at any time.

Internet

The Owner's Manual and general information on BMW, for example on technology, are available on the Internet: www.bmwusa.com.

BMW Driver’s Guide App

The Owner's Manual is available in many countries as an app. Additional information on the Internet:

www.bmw.com/bmw_drivers_guide

Symbols and displays

Symbols in the Owner's Manual

⚠ Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.

◄ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

♻ Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.

"..." Identifies display texts in vehicle used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

»...« Identifies the answers generated by the voice activation system.

Action steps

Action steps to be carried out are presented as numbered list. The steps must be carried out in the defined order.

1. First action step.
2. Second action step.

Enumerations

Enumerations without mandatory order or alternative possibilities are presented as list with bullet points.

- ▷ First possibility.
- ▷ Second possibility.

Symbols on vehicle components

📖 Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Vehicle features and options

This Owner's Manual describes all models and all standard, country-specific and optional equipment that is offered in the model series. Therefore, this Owner's Manual also describes and illustrates features and functions that are not available in your vehicle, for example because of the selected optional features or the country-specific version.

This also applies to safety-related functions and systems.

When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

For any options and equipment not described in this Owner's Manual, refer to the Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Your dealer’s service center is happy to answer any questions that you may have about the features and options applicable to your vehicle.

Status of the Owner's Manual

Basic information

The manufacturer of your vehicle pursues a policy of constant development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards. In rare cases, therefore, the features described in this Owner's Manual may differ from those in your vehicle.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

Due to updates after the editorial deadline, differences may exist between the printed Owner's Manual and the following Owner's Manuals:

- ▷ Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle.
- ▷ Online Owner's Manual.
- ▷ BMW Driver’s Guide app.

Notes on updates can be found in the appendix of the printed Owner's Manual for the vehicle.

For Your Own Safety

Intended use

Observe the following when using the vehicle:

- ▷ Owner's Manual.
- ▷ Information on the vehicle. Do not remove stickers.
- ▷ Technical vehicle data.
- ▷ The traffic, speed, and safety laws where the vehicle is driven.
- ▷ Vehicle documents and statutory documents.

Warranty

Your vehicle is technically configured for the operating conditions and registration requirements applying in the country of first delivery, also known as homologation. If your vehicle is to be operated in a different country it might be necessary to adapt your vehicle to potentially differing operating conditions and permit requirements. If your vehicle does not comply with the homologation requirements in a certain country you may not be able to lodge warranty claims for your vehicle there. Further information on warranty is available from a dealer's service center.

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e. g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires suitable maintenance and repair work.

The manufacturer of the vehicle recommends that you entrust corresponding procedures to a BMW dealer's service center. If you choose to use another service facility, BMW recommends use of a facility that performs work, for instance maintenance and repair, according to BMW specifications with properly trained personnel, referred to in this Owner's Manual as "another qualified service center or repair shop".

If work is performed improperly, for instance maintenance and repair, there is a risk of subsequent damage and related safety risks.

Parts and accessories

BMW recommends the use of parts and accessory products approved by BMW.

Approved parts and accessories, and advice on their use and installation are available from a BMW dealer's service center.

BMW parts and accessories have been tested by BMW for their safety and suitability in BMW vehicles.

BMW warrants genuine BMW parts and accessories.

BMW does not evaluate whether each individual product from another manufacturer can be used with BMW vehicles without presenting a safety hazard, even if a country-specific official approval was issued. BMW does not evaluate whether these products are suitable for BMW vehicles under all usage conditions.

California Proposition 65 Warning

California laws require us to state the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling. Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly. Your vehicle is covered by the following warranties:

- ▷ New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Rust Perforation Limited Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty.
- ▷ Federal Emissions Performance Warranty.
- ▷ California Emission Control System Limited Warranty.

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Your vehicle has been specifically adapted and designed to meet the particular operating conditions and homologation requirements in your country and continental region in order to deliver the full driving pleasure while the vehicle is operated under those conditions. If you wish to operate your vehicle in another country or region, you may be required to adapt your vehicle to meet different prevailing operating conditions and homologation requirements. You should also be aware of any applicable warranty limitations or exclusions for such country or region. In such case, please contact Customer Relations for further information.

Maintenance

Maintain the vehicle regularly to sustain the road safety, operational reliability and the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Specifications for required maintenance measures:

- ▷ BMW Maintenance system
- ▷ Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models
- ▷ Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

If the vehicle is not maintained according to these specifications, this could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Such damage is not covered by the BMW New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Data memory

General information

Electronic control devices are installed in the vehicle. Some of these are necessary for the vehicle to function safely or provide assistance during driving, for instance driver assistance systems. Furthermore, control devices facilitate comfort or infotainment functions.

Electronic control devices contain data memories, which are able to temporarily or permanently store information about the condition of the vehicle, component load, maintenance requirements, technical events or faults.

This information generally records the state of a component, a module, a system or the environment, for instance:

- ▷ Operating states of system components, e.g., fill levels, tire pressure, battery status.
- ▷ Status messages for the vehicle and its individual components, e.g., wheel rotational speed, wheel speed, deceleration, transverse acceleration, engaged safety belt indicator.
- ▷ Malfunctions and faults in important system components, for instance lights and brakes.
- ▷ Information on vehicle-damaging events.
- ▷ Responses by the vehicle to special situations such as airbag deployment or engagement of the stability control systems.
- ▷ Ambient conditions, e.g., temperature, rain sensor signals.

The data is required to perform the control device functions. Furthermore, it also serves to recognize and correct malfunctions, and helps the vehicle manufacturer to optimize vehicle functions. The majority of this data is transient and is only processed within the vehicle itself. Only a small proportion of the data is stored in event or fault memories and, if needed, in the vehicle key.

Reading out data

When servicing, for instance during repairs, service processes, warranty cases, and quality assurance measures, this technical information can be read out from the vehicle together with the vehicle identification number. A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop can read out the information. The socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis required by law in the vehicle is used to read out the data. The data is collected, processed, and used by the relevant organizations in the serv-

ice network. The data documents the technical conditions of the vehicle, helps in locating faults and improving quality, and is transferred to the vehicle manufacturer, if needed.

Furthermore, the manufacturer has product monitoring duties to meet in line with product liability law. To fulfill these duties, the vehicle manufacturer needs technical data from the vehicle. Fault and event memories in the vehicle can be reset when a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop performs repair or servicing work.

Data on the scope of servicing work performed and maintenance records are stored in the vehicle by means of the service history and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. The vehicle owner can contact a dealer's service center to object to the data being stored and transferred to the vehicle manufacturer. This objection applies for as long as the vehicle owner remains the proprietor of the vehicle.

Data entry and data transfer into the vehicle

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment, some data can be transferred into the vehicle when using comfort and infotainment functions, for instance:

- ▷ Multimedia data such as music, films or photos for playback in an integrated multimedia system.
- ▷ Address book data for use in conjunction with an integrated hands-free system or an integrated navigation system.
- ▷ Entered navigation destinations.
- ▷ Data on the use of Internet services.

This data can be stored locally in the vehicle or is found on a device that has been connected to the vehicle, e.g., a smartphone, USB stick or MP3 player. If this data is stored in the vehicle, it can be deleted at any time. This data is only transmitted to third parties if expressly desired.

This depends on the personal settings selected for using online services.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following comfort and individual settings can be stored in the vehicle and modified at any time, for instance:

- ▷ Settings for the seat and steering wheel positions.
- ▷ Suspension and climate control settings.
- ▷ Individual settings, for instance lighting in the car's interior.

Control via mobile devices

Depending on the vehicle equipment, mobile devices connected to the vehicle, for instance smartphones, can be controlled via the vehicle control elements. The sound and picture from the mobile device can be played back and displayed through the multimedia system. Certain information is transferred to the mobile device at the same time. Depending on the type of connection, this includes, for instance position data and other general vehicle information. This optimizes the way in which selected apps, for instance navigation or music playback, work.

There is no further interaction between the mobile device and the vehicle, for instance active access to vehicle data. How the data will be processed further is determined by the provider of the particular app being used. The extent of the possible settings depends on the respective app and the operating system of the mobile device.

Services

General information

If the vehicle has a wireless network connection, this enables data to be exchanged between the vehicle and other systems. The wireless network connection is realized via an in-vehicle transmitter and receiver unit or via personal mobile devices brought into the vehi-

cle, for instance smartphones. This wireless network connection enables 'online functions' to be used. These include online services and apps supplied by the vehicle manufacturer or by other providers.

Services from the vehicle manufacturer

Where online services from the vehicle manufacturer are concerned, the corresponding functions are described in the appropriate place, for instance the Owner's Manual or manufacturer's website. The relevant legal information pertaining to data protection is provided there too. Personal data may be used to perform online services. Data is exchanged over a secure connection, for instance with the IT systems of the vehicle manufacturer intended for this purpose. Any collection, processing, and use of personal data above and beyond that needed to provide the services must always be based on a legal permission, contractual arrangement or consent.

In addition, the vehicle manufacturer evaluates anonymized information on transport infrastructure and how the infotainment system is used. This information cannot be traced back to individual vehicles or people. Evaluating the data enables the manufacturer to further improve its products or services, for instance by incorporating the most up-to-date traffic bulletins. The data transfer feature can be deactivated in the vehicle. Certain services and functions, some of which are subject to a charge, can be deactivated by the driver. It is also possible to activate or deactivate the data connection as a whole. That is, with the exception of functions and services required by law such as Assist systems.

Services from other providers

When using online services from other providers, these services are the responsibility of the relevant provider and subject to their data privacy conditions and terms of use. The vehicle manufacturer has no influence on the content exchanged during this process. Information on the way in which personal data is collected and used in relation to services from third parties, the scope of such data, and its purpose, can be obtained from the relevant service provider.

Event Data Recorder EDR

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder EDR. The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle’s systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- ▷ How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- ▷ Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were fastened.
- ▷ How far, if at all, the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- ▷ How fast the vehicle was traveling.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

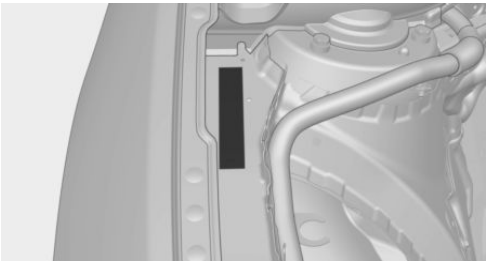
EDR data is recorded by your vehicle only if a nontrivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data, for instance name, gender, age, and crash location, are recorded.

However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

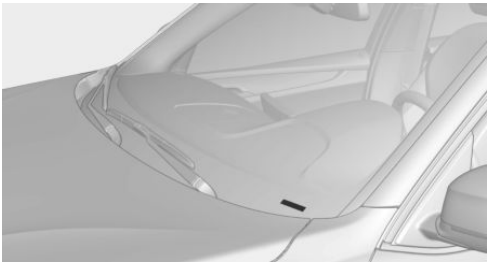
To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law

enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Vehicle identification number



The vehicle identification number can be found in the engine compartment, on the right-hand side of the vehicle.



The vehicle identification number can also be found behind the windshield.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following only applies to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call the toll-free hotline 1-800-333-0510. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

At a glance

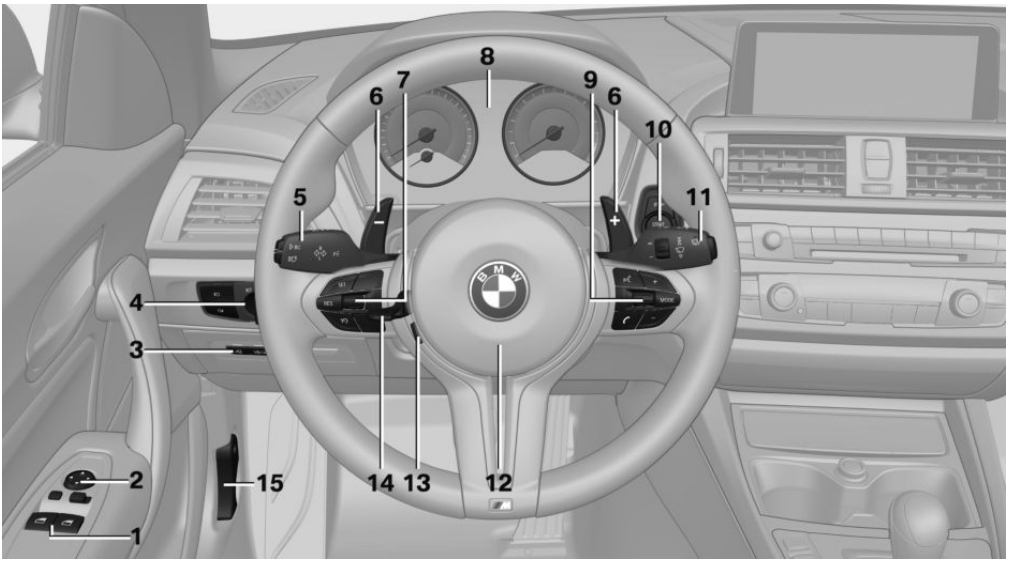
This chapter shows the arrangement of the buttons, switches and displays. Moreover, you will become familiar with the available control concepts and options quickly.

Cockpit

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

In the vicinity of the steering wheel



1 Power windows 63

2 Exterior mirror operation 75

3 Glove compartment on the driver's side 166

Driver assistance systems

Intelligent Safety 125

Lane departure warning 132

4 Lights

Light switch 112

Lights off

Daytime running lights 114

Parking lights 112

Low beams 112

Automatic headlight control 113

Adaptive light functions 114

High-beam Assistant 114

Instrument lighting 115

5 Steering column stalk, left

Turn signal 89

High beams, headlight flasher 89

High-beam Assistant 114

Roadside parking lights 112

Onboard Computer 108

6 M double-clutch transmission: shift paddles 94

7 Steering wheel buttons, left

Cruise control on/off, interrupt 140

SET Cruise control: store speed

RES Cruise control: resume speed

Cruise control rocker switch

8 Instrument cluster 99

9 Steering wheel buttons, right

MODE Entertainment source, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Volume, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Voice activation 29

Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

Thumbwheel for selection lists 108

10 START STOP ENGINE Start/stop the engine and switch the ignition on/off 85

A OFF Auto Start/Stop function 86

11 Steering column stalk, right

Wipers 90

Rain sensor 91

Clean the windshield and headlights 91

12 Horn, entire surface

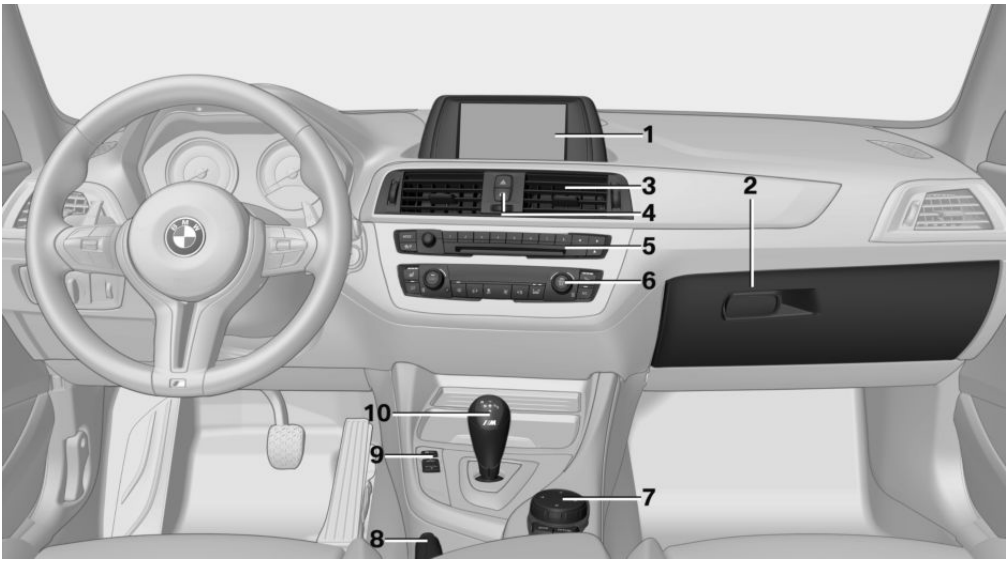
13 Heated steering wheel 78

14 Adjust the steering wheel 77

15 Unlock hood 202

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

In the vicinity of the center console



1 Control Display 20

2 Glove compartment 165

3 Ventilation 154

4 Hazard warning system 218

Central locking system 54

5 Radio/CD/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6

6 Climate control 148

7 Controller with buttons 20

8 Parking brake 89

9 SPORT COMFORT Driving Dynamics Control 137

OFF DSC Dynamic Stability Control 135

10 M double-clutch transmission, selector lever 94

Manual transmission, selector lever 94

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

All about the roofliner

1	SOS	Emergency Request, SOS 218	4		Reading lights 115
2		Glass sunroof 64	5		Interior lights 115
3	PASS AIR BAG OFF	Indicator light, front-seat passenger airbag 120			

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

iDrive

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The concept

The iDrive combines the functions of many switches. These functions can be operated via the Controller.

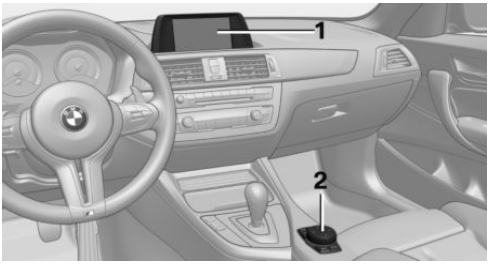
Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

Operation

Overview



1 Control Display

2 Controller with buttons and, depending on the equipment version, with touchpad

Control Display

General information

To clean the Control Display, follow the care instructions, refer to page 228.

Do not place objects close to the Control Display; otherwise, the Control Display can be damaged.

In the case of very high temperatures on the Control Display, for instance due to intense solar radiation, the brightness may be reduced down to complete deactivation. Once the temperature is reduced, for instance through shade or air conditioning, the normal functions are restored.

Switching on

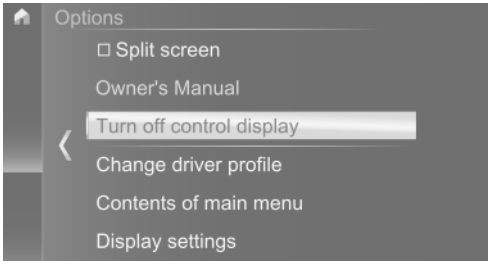
1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the Controller.

Switching off

1. OPTION Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

2. "Turn off control display"



Controller with navigation system

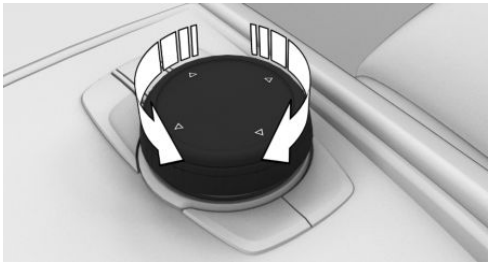
General information

The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

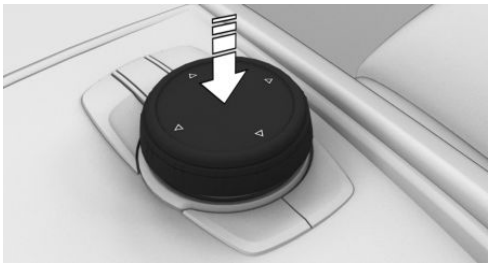
Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller, refer to page 26.

Operation

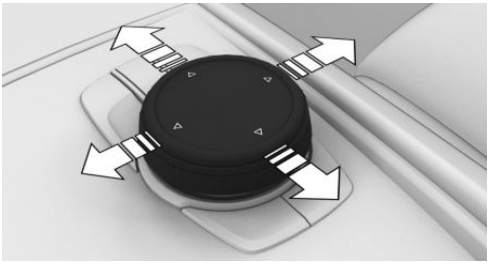
▷ Turn.



▷ Press.



▷ Move in four directions.



Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu. Press twice: display all menu items of the main menu.
COM	Open the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Open the Media/Radio menu.
NAV	Open destination input menu for navigation.
MAP	Open navigation map.
BACK	Press once: open the previous display. Press and hold: open the menus used last.
OPTION	Open the Options menu.

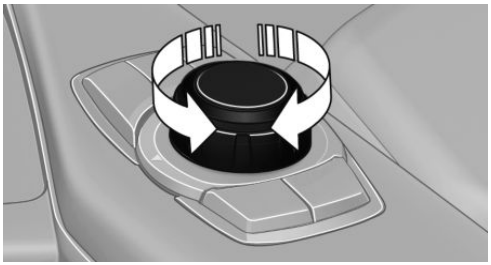
Controller without navigation system

General information

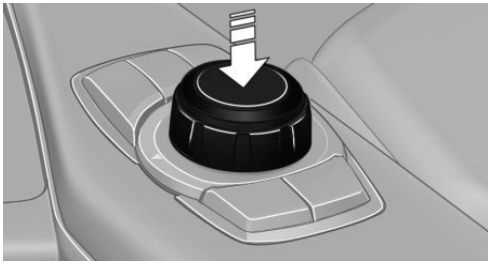
The buttons can be used to open the menus directly. The Controller can be used to select menu items and enter the settings.

Operation

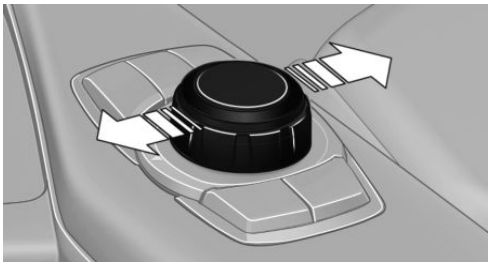
▷ Turn.



▷ Press.



▷ Move in two directions.



Buttons on the Controller

Button	Function
MENU	Press once: call up main menu. Press twice: display all menu items of the main menu.
COM	Open the Communication menu.
MEDIA	Open the Media/Radio menu.
BACK	Press once: open the previous display. Press and hold: open the menus used last.
OPTION	Open the Options menu.

Operating with the Controller

Opening the main menu

MENU Press button.

The main menu is displayed.

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Adapting the main menu

1. MENU Press the button twice.

   All menu items of the main menu are displayed.
2. Select a menu item.
3. To move the menu item to the desired position, tilt the Controller to the right or left.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Selecting menu items

Highlighted menu items can be selected.

1. Turn the Controller until the desired menu item is highlighted.

2. Press the Controller.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for example "iDrive settings".

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, for instance "iDrive settings", a new display appears.

▷ Move the Controller to the left.

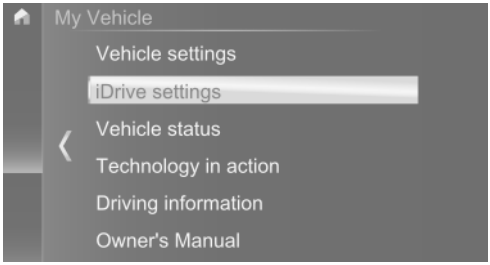
Closes the current display and shows the previous display.

▷ BACK Press button.

The previous display opens.

▷ Move the Controller to the right.

New display is opened.



The arrow indicates that additional displays can be opened.

Opening recently used menus

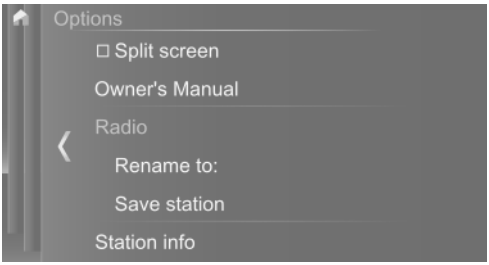
The recently used menus can be displayed.

BACK Press and hold this button.

Opening the Options menu

OPTION Press button.

The "Options" menu is displayed.



The Options menu consists of various areas:

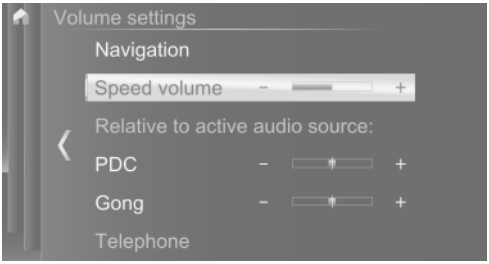
▷ Screen settings, for instance "Split screen".

▷ Control options for the selected main menu, for instance for "Media/Radio".

▷ If applicable, further operating options for the selected menu, for instance "Save station".

Changing settings

1. Select a field.
2. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is displayed.



3. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered via the controller.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Entering

1. Turn the controller: select letters or numbers.
2. OK : confirm entry.

Symbol	Function
I←	Press the controller: delete the letters or number.
I←	Hold the controller down: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Depending on the menu, you can switch between entering upper and lower case, letters and numbers.

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
abc or ABC	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Entry comparison

When entering names and addresses, the choice is narrowed down with every letter entered and letters may be added automatically.

Entries are continuously compared with data stored in the vehicle.

- ▷ Only those letters are offered during entry for which data is available.
- ▷ Destination search: place names can be entered in all languages that are available in iDrive.

Using alphabetical lists

For alphabetical lists with more than 30 entries, the letters for which there is an entry are displayed at the left edge.

1. Turn the Controller to the left or right quickly.

   All letters for which there are entries are displayed on the left side.
2. Select the first letter of the desired entry.

   The first entry of the selected letter is displayed.

Operating via touchscreen

General information

The Control Display is equipped with a touchscreen.

Touch screen with your fingers. Do not use any objects.

Opening the main menu

⌂ Tap on symbol.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

All iDrive functions can be called up via the main menu.

Selecting menu items

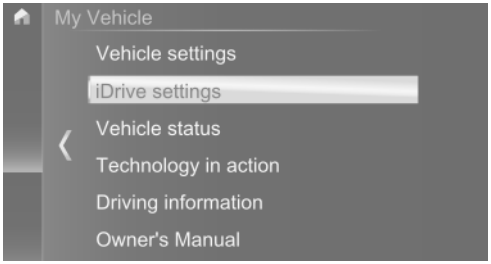
Tap desired menu item.

Menu items in the Owner's Manual

In the Owner's Manual, menu items that can be selected are set in quotation marks, for example "iDrive settings".

Changing between displays

After a menu item is selected, a new display opens.



The white arrow indicates that additional displays can be called up.

▷ Swipe to the left.

▷ Tap on symbol.

New display is opened.

Opening recently used menus

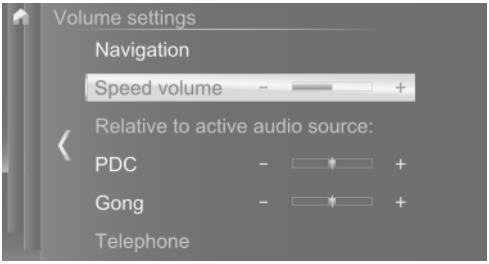
1. Tap on symbol.
2. Tap on symbol.

Changing settings

Settings such as volumes can be changed via the touchscreen.

▷ Slide in the selected field to the right or left, until the desired setting is displayed.

▷ − , + Tap on symbol.



Activating/deactivating the functions

Several menu items are preceded by a checkbox. The checkbox indicates whether the function is activated or deactivated. Selecting the menu item activates or deactivates the function.

☑ Function is activated.

☐ Function is deactivated.

Entering letters and numbers

General information

Letters and numbers can be entered using the Controller or the touchscreen.

The keyboard's display changes automatically.

Symbol	Function
I←	Tapping the symbol: delete the letter or number.
I←	Tapping and holding the symbol for an extended period: delete all letters or numbers.

Switching between upper/lower case, numbers and characters

Symbol	Function
ABC	Enter the letters.
1@+	Enter the numbers.
ABC or abc	Change between capital and lower-case letters.

Operating navigation map

The navigation map can be moved with the touchscreen.

Function	Operation
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out with the fingers.

Touchpad

General information

Some iDrive functions can be operated using the touchpad on the Controller.

Selecting functions

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Touchpad"
4. Select the desired setting.
   - ▷ "Speller": enter letters and numbers.
   - ▷ "Map": using the map.
   - ▷ "Search fields": write letters without selecting the list field.
   - ▷ "Audio feedback": pronounces entered letters and numbers.

Entering letters and numbers

Entering letters requires some practice at the beginning. When entering, pay attention to the following:

- ▷ The system distinguishes between upper and lower-case letters and numbers. To make entries, it may be necessary to change between upper and lower-case letters, numbers and characters, refer to page 24.
- ▷ Enter characters as they are displayed on the Control Display.
- ▷ Always enter associated characters, such as accents or periods so that the letter can be clearly recognized. The set language determines what input is possible. Where necessary, enter special characters via the Controller.
- ▷ To delete a character, swipe to the left on the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a blank space, swipe to the right in the center of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter a hyphen, swipe to the right in the upper area of the touchpad.
- ▷ To enter an underscore, swipe to the right in the lower area of the touchpad.

Using the map

The map in the navigation system can be moved via the touchpad.

Function	Operation
Move map.	Swipe in the appropriate direction.
Enlarge/shrink map.	Drag in or out on the touchpad with fingers.
Display menu.	Tap once.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Split screen

General information

Additional information can be displayed in several menus on the right side of the split screen, for example information from the onboard computer.

In the divided screen view, the so-called split screen, this information remains visible even when you change to another menu.

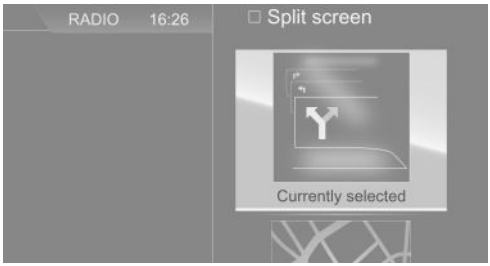
Switching the split screen on/off

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Split screen"

Selecting the display

The display can be selected in menus, where the split screen is supported.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.



3. Select the desired setting.

Specifying the number of displays

It is possible to specify the number of displays.

1. Move the Controller to the right until the split screen is selected.
2. Press the Controller.
3. "Personalize menu"
4. Select desired setting.
5. Move the Controller to the left.

Status information

General information

The status field can be found in the upper area of the Control Display. Status information is displayed in the form of symbols.

Status field symbols

Radio

Symbol	Meaning
HD	HD Radio station is being received.
SXM	Satellite radio is switched on.

Telephone

Symbol	Meaning
	Incoming or outgoing call.
	Missed call.
	Signal strength of cellular network.
	Network search.
	Cellular network is not available.
	The critical charge state of the mobile phone has been reached.
	Roaming is active.
	SMS text message received.
	Message received.
	Reminder.
	Sending not possible.
	Contacts are loaded.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Entertainment

Symbol	Meaning
	CD/DVD player.
	Music collection.
	Bluetooth audio.
	USB audio interface.
	Mobile phone audio interface.
	WiFi.
	iPod.

Additional symbols

Symbol	Meaning
	Check Control message.
	The sound output has been switched off.
	Encrypted connection not active.
	Request for the current vehicle position.
	Checking the current vehicle position.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The iDrive functions can be stored on the programmable memory buttons and called up directly, for instance radio stations, navigation destinations, phone numbers and menu entries.

Settings are stored for the driver profile currently used.

Saving a function

1. Select function via iDrive.
2. 1...8 Press and hold the desired button until a signal sounds.

Running a function

1...8 Press button.

The function will work immediately. This means, for example, that the number is dialed when a phone number is selected.

Displaying the key assignment

Touch buttons with finger. Do not wear gloves or use objects.

The button assignment is displayed at the top edge of screen.

Deleting the button assignments

1. Press buttons 1 and 8 simultaneously for approx. 5 seconds.
2. "OK"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Voice activation system

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Concept

Most functions displayed on the Control Display can be operated by voice commands via the voice activation system. The system supports you with announcements during input.

General information

- ▷ Functions that can only be used when the vehicle is stationary can only be operated via the voice activation system to a limited extent.
- ▷ The system uses a special microphone on the driver's side.
- ▷ ›...‹ in the Owner's Manual denotes verbal instructions to use with the voice activation system.
- ▷ Say the commands, numbers, and letters smoothly and with normal volume, emphasis, and speed.
- ▷ Always say commands in the language of the voice activation system.

Requirements

Via the Control Display, set a language that is also supported by the voice activation system so that the spoken commands can be identified.

To set the language, refer to page 32.

Using voice activation

Activating the voice activation system

1. Press button on the steering wheel.
2. Wait for the signal.
3. Say the command.

This symbol in the instrument cluster indicates that the voice activation system is active.

If no other commands are possible, operate the function via iDrive.

Terminating the voice activation system

Briefly press the button on the steering wheel or ›Cancel‹.

Possible commands

General information

Most menu items on the Control Display can be voiced as commands.

Commands from other menus can also be spoken.

You may select list entries such as phone list entries via voice activation. Read these list entries out loud exactly as they are shown in the respective list.

Displaying possible commands

The following is displayed in the top area of the Control Display:

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ Some possible commands for the current menu.
- ▷ Some possible commands from other menus.
- ▷ Status of the voice recognition.
- ▷ Encrypted connection is not available.

Help on the voice activation system

- ▷ To have information on the operating principle of the voice activation system read out loud: ›General information on voice control‹.
- ▷ To have help for the current menu read out loud: ›Help‹.

One example: opening the tone settings

The commands of the menu items are spoken just as they are selected via the Controller.

1. Turn on the Entertainment sound output if needed.
2. Press button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Media and radio‹
4. ›Tone‹

Adjusting

Setting the voice dialog

Set system to standard dialog or use a short version.

The short version of the voice dialog plays back short messages in abbreviated form.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speech mode:"
5. Select desired setting.

Selecting the input language

For some languages, the input language can be selected.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Voice control:"
5. Select desired setting.

Activating voice recognition via the server

The voice recognition feature via the server provides a dictation function and a natural method of entering destinations while improving the quality of voice recognition. To use the functions, data is transmitted to a service provider and locally stored there.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Server speech recognition"

Speaking during voice output

It is possible to answer during inquiries of the voice activation system. The function can be deactivated if inquiries are often undesirably interrupted, for instance due to background noise or talking.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Speaking during voice output"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Adjusting the volume

Turn the volume button during the spoken instructions until the desired volume is set.

- ▷ The volume remains constant even if the volume of other audio sources is changed.
- ▷ The volume is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Information on Emergency Requests

Do not use the voice activation system to initiate an Emergency Request. In stressful situations, the voice and vocal pitch can change. This can unnecessarily delay the establishment of a phone connection.

Instead, use the SOS button, refer to page 218, close to the interior mirror.

Environmental conditions

- ▷ Keep the doors, windows, and glass sunroof closed to prevent noise interference.
- ▷ Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

General settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Language

Setting the language

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Language"
4. "Language:"
5. Select desired setting.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Setting the voice dialog

Voice dialog for the voice activation system, refer to page 30.

Time

Setting the time zone

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time zone:"
5. Select desired setting.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Setting the time

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired hours are displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Turn the Controller until the desired minutes are displayed.
8. Press the Controller.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Setting the time format

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Time format:"
5. Select desired setting.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Automatic time setting

Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the time, date and, if needed, the time zone are updated automatically.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

3. "Date and time"
4. "Automatic time setting"

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Date

Setting the date

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired day is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.
7. Make the settings for the month and year.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Setting the date format

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Date and time"
4. "Date format:"
5. Select desired setting.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Setting the units of measurement

You can set the units of measurement for some values, for example, fuel consumption, distances and temperature.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Units"
4. Select the desired menu item.
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Activating/deactivating the display of the current vehicle position

Concept

If vehicle location has been activated, the current vehicle position can be displayed in the BMW Connected app or in the ConnectedDrive customer portal.

Activating/deactivating

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Vehicle tracking"
4. "Vehicle tracking"

Activating/deactivating popup windows

For some functions, popup windows are displayed automatically on the Control Display. Some of these popup windows can be activated or deactivated.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Pop-ups"
4. Select the desired setting.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Control Display

Brightness

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Brightness"
6. Turn the controller until the desired brightness is set.
7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Depending on the light conditions, the brightness settings may not be clearly visible.

Screen saver

If no settings are made via iDriver, after a time that can be set, a screen saver is displayed.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Control display"
5. "Screensaver"
6. Select desired setting.

The setting is stored for the drive profile currently used.

Selecting the contents of the main menu

For some menu items of the main menu, the displayed contents can be selected.

1.

Press button.
2. "Contents of main menu"
3. Select the desired menu and the desired content.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Messages

Concept

The menu centrally displays all messages arriving in the vehicle in list form.

General information

The following messages can be displayed:

- ▷ Traffic messages.
- ▷ Check Control messages.
- ▷ Communication messages, for example e-mails, SMS text messages or reminders.
- ▷ Service requirements messages.

Messages are additionally displayed in the status field.

Retrieving messages

Using iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.

The respective menu is opened, where the message is displayed.

Deleting messages

All messages, except Check Control messages, can be deleted from the list. Check Control messages are displayed as long as they are relevant.

About iDrive:

1. "Notifications"
2. Select the desired message.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

3. OPTION Press button.
4. "Delete this notification" or "Delete all notifications"

Settings

The following settings can be adjusted:

- ▷ Select the applications, from which messages will be permitted.
- ▷ Sort the messages according to date or priority.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Notifications"
4. Select the desired setting.

Data protection

Data transfer

Concept

The vehicle offers different functions, whose use requires a data transfer to BMW or a service provider. The data transfer can be deactivated for some functions.

General information

With data transfer deactivated, the respective function cannot be used.

Only make these settings while stationary.

Activating/deactivating the data transfer

Follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"
5. Select the desired setting.

Deleting personal in the vehicle

The concept

Depending on the usage, the vehicle saves personal data, such as stored radio stations. These personal data can be permanently deleted through iDrive.

General information

Depending on the equipment package, the following data can be deleted:

- ▷ Driver profile settings.
- ▷ Stored radio stations.
- ▷ Stored programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Travel and Onboard Computer information.
- ▷ Music collection.
- ▷ Navigation, for instance stored destinations.
- ▷ Phone book.
- ▷ Online data, for instance Favorites, cookies.
- ▷ Office data, for instance voice notes.
- ▷ Login accounts.

Altogether, the deletion of the data can take up to 15 minutes.

Functional requirement

Data can only be deleted while stationary.

Deleting data

Heed and follow the instructions on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "iDrive settings"
4. "Data privacy"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

5. "Delete personal data"
6. "Delete personal data"
7. "OK"
8. Exit and lock the vehicle.

After 15 minutes, the deletion process is completed.

If not all of the data was deleted, repeat the deletion.

Canceling deletion

Start the engine to cancel deletion of the data.

Connections

Concept

Various connection types are available for using mobile devices in the vehicle. The connection type to select depends on the mobile device and the desired function.

General information

The following overview shows possible functions and the suitable connection types for them. The scope of functions depends on the mobile device.

Function	Connection type
Making calls via the hands-free system. Using phone functions via iDrive. Using the smartphone Office functions.	Bluetooth.
Playing music from the smartphone or the audio player.	Bluetooth or USB.
Using compatible apps via iDrive.	Bluetooth or USB.
USB storage device: Exporting and importing driver profiles. Performing software updates. Exporting and importing stored trips. Playing music.	USB.
Playing videos from the smartphone or the USB storage device.	USB.
Using the vehicle Internet access.	Internet hotspot.
Use Apple Carplay apps via iDrive and voice operation.	Bluetooth and WiFi.
Screen Mirroring: Showing the smartphone display on the Control Display.	WiFi.

The following connection types require one-time pairing with the vehicle:

- ▷ Bluetooth.
- ▷ Internet hotspot.
- ▷ Apple CarPlay.
- ▷ Screen Mirroring.

Paired devices are automatically recognized later on and connected to the vehicle.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating the integrated information systems and communication devices while driving can distract from traffic. It is possible to lose control of the vehicle. There is a risk of an accident. Only use the systems or devices when the traffic situation allows. If necessary, stop and use the systems and devices while the vehicle is stationary.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Compatible devices

General information

Information on mobile devices compatible with the vehicle can be found at www.bmwusa.com/bluetooth.

Malfunctions may occur with devices not listed or deviating software versions.

Displaying the vehicle identification number and software part number

When looking for compatible devices, you may have to state the vehicle identification number and the software part number. These numbers can be displayed in the vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth® info"
6. "System information"

A software update, refer to page 43, can be performed, if needed.

Bluetooth connection

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, refer to page 37, with Bluetooth interface.
- ▷ The remote control is in the vehicle.
- ▷ The device is ready for operation.
- ▷ Bluetooth is activated on the device and in the vehicle, refer to page 37.
- ▷ Bluetooth pre-settings may be required on the device, for instance visibility, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Switching on Bluetooth

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Bluetooth®"

Activating/deactivating telephone functions

To use all supported functions of a mobile phone, the following functions must be activated prior to pairing.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Office"

     Activate function to transmit short messages, e-mails, calendars, tasks, notes, and reminders to the vehicle. Costs can be incurred by transmitting all data to the vehicle.
   - ▷ "Contact images"

     Activate function to show the contact pictures.
6. Move the Controller to the left.

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. Select the functions for which the device will be used:

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ "Telephone"
- ▷ "Bluetooth® audio"
- ▷ "Apps"
- ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed on the Control Display.

6. Search for Bluetooth devices in the vicinity of the mobile device.

   The Bluetooth name of the vehicle appears on the mobile device display.

   Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle.

7. Depending on the mobile device, a control number is displayed or the control number must be entered.

   - ▷ Compare the control number displayed on the Control Display with the control number on the display of the device.

     Confirm the control number on the device and on the Control Display.

   - ▷ Enter and confirm the same control number on the device and via iDrive.

   The device is connected and displayed in the device list, refer to page 41.

If connection was not successful: Frequently Asked Questions, refer to page 38.

Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

Why could the mobile phone not be paired or connected?

- ▷ There are too many Bluetooth devices connected to the mobile phone or vehicle.

  In the vehicle, delete Bluetooth connections with other devices.

  Delete all known Bluetooth connections from the device list on the mobile phone and start a new device search.

- ▷ The mobile phone is in power-save mode or has only a limited remaining battery life.

  Charge mobile phone.

- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, it is possible that only one mobile phone can be connected to the vehicle.

  Unpair the connected mobile phone from the vehicle and pair and connect only one mobile phone.

Why does the mobile phone no longer react?

- ▷ The applications on the mobile phone do not function anymore.

  Switch the mobile phone off and on again.

- ▷ Too high or too low ambient temperatures for mobile phone operation.

  Do not subject the mobile phone to extreme ambient temperatures.

Why can phone functions not be used via iDrive?

- ▷ The mobile phone may not be properly configured, for instance as Bluetooth audio device.

  Connect the mobile phone with the telephone or additional phone function.

Why are no or not all phone book entries displayed or why are they incomplete?

- ▷ Transmission of the phone book entries is not yet complete.
- ▷ It is possible that only the phone book entries of the mobile phone or the SIM card are transmitted.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.
- ▷ It may not be possible to transmit contacts from social networks.
- ▷ The number of phone book entries to be stored is too high.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- Data volume of the contact too large, for instance due to stored information such as notes.

  Reduce the data volume of the contact.
- A mobile phone can only be connected as audio source or as telephone.

  Configure the mobile phone and connect it with the telephone or additional phone function.

How can the phone connection quality be improved?

- The strength of the Bluetooth signal on the mobile phone can be adjusted, depending on the mobile phone.
- Insert the mobile phone into the snap-in adapter or place it in the area of the center console.
- Insert mobile phone into the wireless charging tray.
- Adjust the volume of the microphone and loudspeakers separately.

If all points in this list have been checked and the required function is still not available, contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

USB connection

General information

Mobile devices with a USB port are connected to the USB interface.

- Mobile phones.

  The snap-in adapter features a separate USB port that is automatically connected when a compatible mobile phone is inserted.
- Audio devices with USB port, for instance MP3 player.
- USB storage devices.

  Common file systems are supported. FAT32 and exFAT are the recommended formats.

The following applications are possible:

- Exporting and importing driver profiles, refer to page 58.
- Playing music files via USB audio.
- Playing videos via USB video.
- Loading of software updates, refer to page 43.

Follow the following when connecting:

- Do not use force when plugging the connector into the USB interface.
- Use a flexible adapter cable.
- Protect the USB storage device against mechanical damage.
- Due to the large number of USB media available on the market, it cannot be guaranteed that every device is operable on the vehicle.
- Do not expose USB media to extreme environmental conditions, such as very high temperatures; refer to the owner's manual of the device.
- Due to the many different compression techniques, proper playback of the media stored on the USB storage device cannot be guaranteed in all cases.
- A connected USB storage device will be supplied with charging current via the USB interface if the device supports this.
- To ensure proper transmission of the stored data, do not charge a USB storage device via the onboard socket, when it is connected to the USB interface.
- Depending on how the USB storage device is being used, settings may be required on the USB storage device, refer to the owner's manual of the device.

Not compatible USB media:

- USB hard drives.
- USB hubs.
- USB memory card readers with multiple inserts.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ HFS-formatted USB media.
- ▷ Devices such as fans or lamps.

Functional requirement

Compatible device, refer to page 37, with USB interface.

Connecting the device

Connect the USB storage device using a suitable adapter cable to a USB interface, refer to page 163.

The USB storage device is displayed in the device list, refer to page 41.

Internet connection

General information

Up to 8 devices can be connected with the Internet hotspot.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible device, refer to page 37, with WiFi interface.
- ▷ ConnectedDrive contract.
- ▷ Data contract with a service provider.
- ▷ WiFi activated on the device.
- ▷ Internet hotspot activated in the vehicle.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

Activating the Internet hotspot

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Internet hotspot"

Connecting device with Internet hotspot

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Connect new device"
5. "Internet hotspot"

   Hotspot name and hotspot code are displayed on the Control Display.
6. Search for WiFi networks on the device. Select network name on the device.
7. Enter hotspot code on the device and connect.

With the first Internet usage via the Internet hotspot, data volume must be purchased from a service provider.

All devices connected via the Internet hotspot use this data volume.

If necessary, data volume can be purchased from the ConnectedDrive Store.

Settings

The network name and hotspot code can be changed. In addition, the network name can be hidden so that it cannot be found by other devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. OPTION Press button.
5. ▷ "Change hotspot key"

   Enter the desired hotspot code.

   ▷ "Change hotspot name"

   Enter the desired network name.

   ▷ "Hide hotspot"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Activate or deactivate the function.

6. To confirm entry of the hotspot code or the name of the network:

   OK Select the symbol.

Apple CarPlay

Concept

CarPlay allows certain functions of a compatible Apple iPhone to be used via Siri voice operation and iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Compatible iPhone, refer to page 37.

  iPhone 5 or later with iOS 7.1 or later.
- ▷ Corresponding mobile wireless contract.
- ▷ Bluetooth, WiFi, and Siri voice operation are switched on on the iPhone.

Switching on Bluetooth and CarPlay

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. Select the following settings:
   - ▷ "Bluetooth®"
   - ▷ "Apple CarPlay"

Pairing iPhone with CarPlay

Pair iPhone via Bluetooth with the vehicle, refer to page 37.

Select CarPlay as the function:

▶ "Apple CarPlay"

The iPhone is connected to the vehicle and displayed in the device list, refer to page 41.

Operation

For more information, see the Integrated Owner's Manual, Online Owner's Manual, BMW Driver's Guide app or, if necessary, the Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment, and Communication.

Frequently asked questions

All requirements are met and all required steps were completed in the specified order. Despite that, the mobile device does not function as expected.

In this case, the following explanations can help:

The iPhone has already been paired with Apple CarPlay. When a new connection is established, CarPlay can no longer be selected.

- ▷ Delete the iPhone concerned from the device list.
- ▷ On the iPhone, delete the vehicle concerned from the list of stored vehicles under Bluetooth and under WiFi.
- ▷ Pair the iPhone as a new device.

If the steps listed have been carried out and the required function is still not available: contact the hotline, a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Managing mobile devices

General information

- ▷ After one-time pairing, the devices are automatically recognized and reconnected when the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The data stored on the SIM card or in the mobile phone are transferred to the vehicle after recognition.
- ▷ For some devices, certain settings may be necessary, for instance authorization, see owner's manual of the device.

Displaying the device list

All devices paired and/or connected with the vehicle are displayed in the device list.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"

2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"

A symbol indicates, for which function a device is used.

Symbol	Function
	"Telephone"
	"Additional telephone"
	"Bluetooth® audio"
	"Apps"
	"Internet hotspot"
	"Apple CarPlay"

Configuring the device

Functions can be activated or deactivated for paired and connected devices.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select the desired device.
5. Select the desired setting.

If a function is assigned to a device, the function will be deactivated where appropriate for a device that is already connected and the device will be disconnected.

Disconnecting the device

The connection of the device to the vehicle is disconnected.

The device remains paired and can be connected again, refer to page 42.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Disconnect device"

Connecting the device

A disconnected device can be reconnected.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Connect device"

The functions that were assigned to the device before disconnecting are assigned to the device when it is reconnected. If the device is already connected, these functions are deactivated.

Deleting the device

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. Select device.
5. "Delete device"

The device is disconnected and removed from the device list.

Swapping the telephone and additional phone

If two mobile phones are connected to the vehicle, the functions of the phone and additional phone can be switched.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Mobile devices"
4. "Settings"
5. "Swap telephone/additional tel."

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Software update

General information

The vehicle supports a large number of mobile devices, e.g., mobile phones and MP3 players. Software updates are available for many of the supported devices. The vehicle is maintained up-to-date via regular vehicle software updates.

Updates and related current information is available at www.bmw.com/update.

Displaying the installed software version

The software version installed in the vehicle is displayed.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Show current version"

If an update has been carried out before, select the desired version to display additional information.

Updating software via USB

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

About iDrive:

1. Store the file for the software update in the main directory of a USB flash drive.
2. Connect the USB data storage to an USB interface.
3. "My Vehicle"
4. "iDrive settings"
5. "Software update"
6. "Update software"
7. "USB"
8. "Install software"
9. "OK"
10. Await the updating.
11. Confirm system restart.

Updating software via BMW Teleservices

Updating software via BMW Teleservices is country-specific and may not be available.

The software is first transferred into the vehicle and can then be installed. The software can be installed at a time different from the time of transfer.

The software can be transferred while driving, and if the trip is interrupted it will resume automatically the next time the vehicle is driven. All other functions remain available during the transfer. Cellular network reception must be available for the transfer to take place.

The software may only be updated when the vehicle is stationary.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Update software"
5. "Teleservices"
6. "Load update"

   The update is loaded but not installed.
7. Install or delete the update.
   - ▷ "Install software"

     The loaded update is installed.

     This step can be carried out at a later point in time.
   - ▷ "Remove update"

     The loaded update is removed.

     The following steps are omitted.
8. "OK"
9. Wait for the update to complete.
10. Confirm system restart.

Restoring the software version

The software version before the last software update and the version before the first software update can be restored.

The software may only be restored when the vehicle is stationary.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Software update"
4. "Restore software"
5. ▷ "Previous version"

   The previous software version is restored.

   ▷ "Default software settings"

   The first software version is restored.
6. "Remove software"
7. "OK"
8. Wait for restore.
9. Confirm system restart.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Concept

The Integrated Owner's Manual specifically describes features and functions found in the vehicle. The Integrated Owner's Manual can be displayed on the Control Display.

Components of the Integrated Owner's Manual

The Integrated owner's manual consists of four parts, which offer various levels of information or possible access.

Quick Reference Guide

The Quick Reference Guide provides information how to operate the car, how to use basic vehicle functions and what to do in case of a breakdown. This information can also be displayed while driving.

Search by images

Image search provides information and descriptions. This is helpful when the terminology for a feature is not at hand.

Keyword search

Search for information and descriptions by entering terms selected from the index.

Videos

The basic functions of selected systems are explained in the videos.

Select components

1. MENU Press button.
2. "My Vehicle"
3. "Owner's Manual"
4. Select desired setting.

Scrolling through the owner's manual

Turn Controller, until the next or previous contents are displayed.

Context help - Owner's Manual to the temporarily selected function

You may open the relevant information directly.

Opening via iDrive

Change directly to the Options menu from the function on the Control Display:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"

Opening when a Check Control message is displayed

Directly from the Check Control message on the Control Display:

"Owner's Manual"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Changing between a function and the operating instructions

To switch from a function, for instance radio, to the Owner's Manual on the Control Display and to alternate between the two displays:

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Owner's Manual"
3. Select the desired page in the Owner's Manual.
4. OPTION Press button again to return to last displayed function.
5. BACK Press button to return to the page of the Owner's Manual displayed last.

To alternate continuously between the last displayed function and the last displayed page of the Owner's Manual, repeat steps 4 & 5. Opens a new display every time.

Programmable memory buttons

General information

The jumps into the Owner's Manual can be stored on the Programmable memory buttons, refer to page 28, and called up directly.

Storing

1. Select the desired entry point via iDrive:
   - ▷ "Quick reference"
   - ▷ "Search by pictures"
   - ▷ "Keyword search"
   - ▷ "Animations"
2. 1...8 Press desired button and hold for more than 2 seconds.

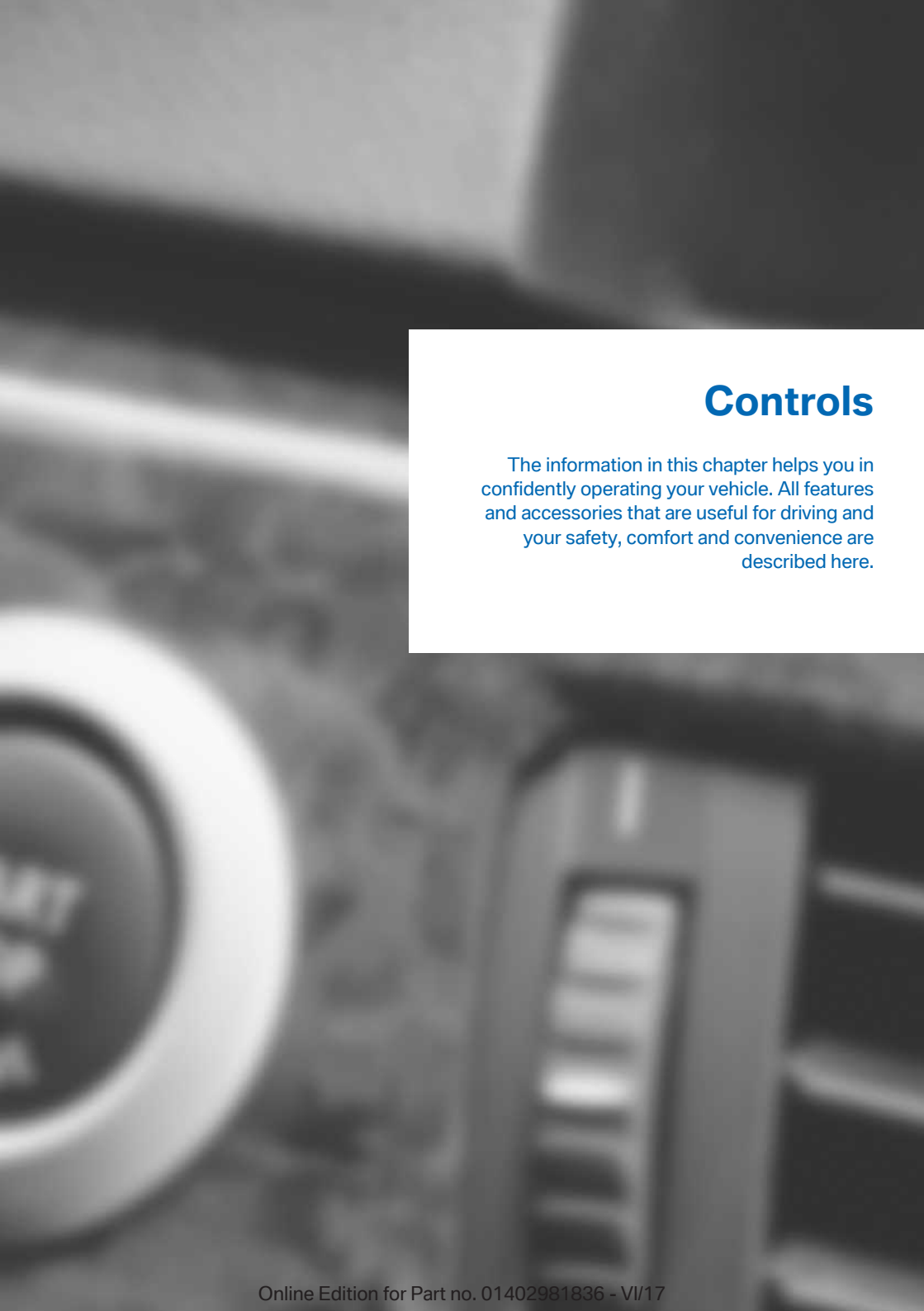
Executing

1...8 Press the corresponding button.

The owner's manual is directly displayed via the selected entry point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17



Controls

The information in this chapter helps you in confidently operating your vehicle. All features and accessories that are useful for driving and your safety, comfort and convenience are described here.

Opening and closing

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Remote control

General information

The vehicle is supplied with two remote controls with integrated key.

Each remote control contains a replaceable battery. Replace the battery, refer to page 52.

You may set the key functions depending on the optional features and country-specific version. Settings, refer to page 60.

The vehicle stores personal settings for every remote control. Driver profile, refer to page 58.

The remote controls hold information about required maintenance. Service data in the remote control, refer to page 210.

Safety information

WARNING

People or animals in the vehicle can lock the doors from the inside and lock themselves in. In this case, the vehicle cannot be opened from the outside. There is a risk of injury. Take the remote control with you so that the vehicle can be opened from the outside.◀

WARNING

Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◀

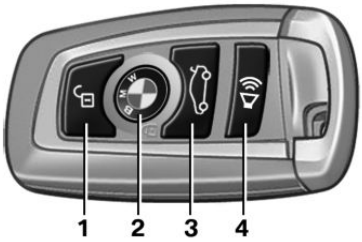
WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Overview



1 Unlocking
2 Locking
3 Unlocking the tailgate
4 Panic mode

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Unlocking

Press button on the remote control.

Depending on the settings, refer to page 60, the following access points are unlocked.

- Driver's door and fuel filler flap.

  Press the button of the remote control again to unlock the other vehicle access points.
- All doors, tailgate, and fuel filler flap.

In addition, the following functions are executed:

- The settings stored in the driver profile, refer to page 58, are applied.
- The driver's seat is set to the last position saved in the driver's profile. This function must be activated in the settings, refer to page 60.
- The interior lights are switched on, unless they were manually switched off. Switch the interior lights on/off manually, refer to page 116.
- The exterior lighting activated in the settings, refer to page 60, is switched on.
- Automatically folded in exterior mirrors are folded open. This function must be activated in the settings.
- The alarm system, refer to page 61, is switched off.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

Convenient opening

Press and hold this button on the remote control after unlocking.

The windows and the glass sunroof are opened, as long as the button on the remote control is pressed.

Locking

1. Close the driver's door.
2. Press button on the remote control.

The following functions are executed:

- All doors, the tailgate, and the fuel filler flap are being locked.
- The alarm system, refer to page 61, is switched on.

If the engine or ignition is still switched on when you lock the vehicle, the vehicle horn honks twice. In this case, the engine or ignition must be switched off by means of the Start/Stop button.

Switching on interior lights and courtesy light

Press button on the remote control with the vehicle locked.

This function is not available, if the interior lights were switched off manually.

The light functions may depend on the ambient brightness.

After locking, wait 10 seconds before pressing the button again.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 60.

The tailgate can only be opened if it is not locked. Separately lock the tailgate, refer to page 57.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

Opening

Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

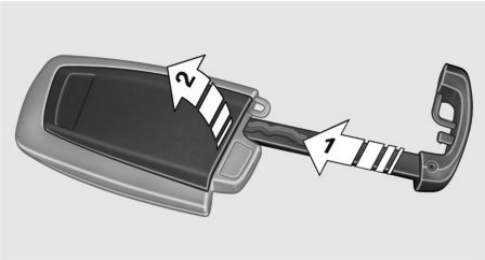
▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.

▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

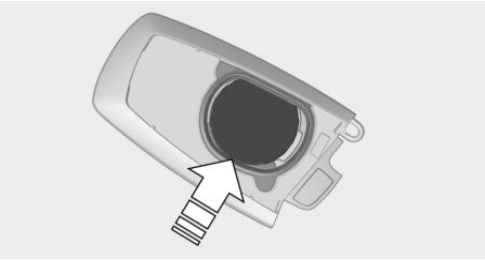
To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Replacing the battery

1. Remove the integrated key from the remote control, refer to page 54.
2. Place the integrated key underneath the battery compartment cover, arrow 1, and lift the cover with a lever movement of the integrated key, arrow 2.



3. Push battery in the direction of the arrow using a pointed object and lift it out.



4. Insert a type CR 2450 battery with the positive side facing up.
5. Press the cover closed.
6. Push the integrated key into the remote control until it engages.

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Additional remote controls

Additional remote controls are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Loss of the remote controls

A lost remote control can be blocked and replaced by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Malfunction

General information

A Check Control message is displayed.

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replacing the battery, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

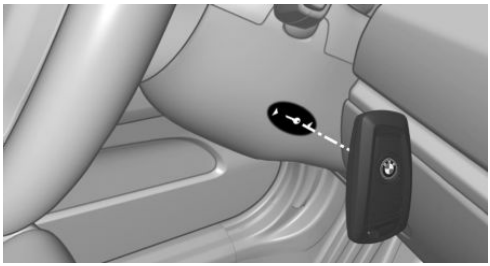
  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.
- ▷ Interference of radio transmission by a charging process of mobile devices, for instance charging of a mobile phone.
- ▷ The remote control is in direct proximity of the wireless charging tray.

  Place the remote control down at a different location.

In the case of interference, the vehicle can be unlocked and locked from the outside with the integrated key, refer to page 53.

Starting the engine via emergency detection of the remote control



1. Hold the remote control with its back against the marked area on the steering column.
2. Start the engine within 10 seconds.

If the remote control is not detected, slightly change the position of the remote control and repeat the procedure.

Integrated key

General information

The driver's door can be locked and unlocked without remote control using the integrated key.

The integrated key can also be used for the glove compartment on the front passenger side.

Safety information

WARNING

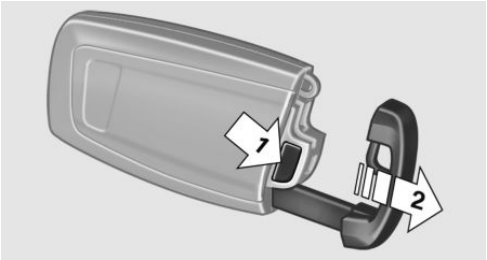
Unlocking from the inside is only possible with special knowledge.

Persons who spend a lengthy time in the vehicle while being exposed to extreme temperatures are at risk of injury or death. Do not lock the vehicle from the outside when there are people in it.◂

NOTE

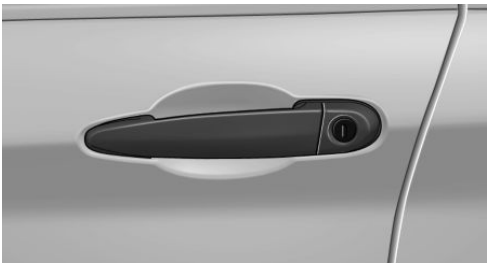
The door lock is permanently joined with the door. The door handle can be moved. When pulling the door handle with the integrated key inserted, paint or the integrated key can be damaged. There is a risk of damage to property. Remove the integrated key before pulling the outside door handle.◀

Removing



Press the button, arrow 1, and pull out the integrated key, arrow 2.

Locking/unlocking via the door lock



Unlock or lock the driver's door via the door lock using the integrated key.

The other doors must be unlocked or locked from the inside.

Alarm system

The alarm system is not switched on if the vehicle is locked with the integrated key.

The alarm system is triggered when the door is opened, if the vehicle has been unlocked via the door lock.

In order to stop the alarm, unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed, through emergency detection of the remote control, refer to page 53.

Button for central locking system

General information

In the event of a severe accident, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. The hazard warning system and interior lights come on.

Overview

Button for the central locking system.

Unlocking and locking

Press button. For locking, the doors must be closed.

- ▷ The fuel filler flap remains unlocked.
- ▷ The vehicle is not secured against theft when locking.

Opening

- ▷ Press button to unlock the doors together, and then pull the door handle above the armrest.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

▷ On the door to be opened, pull the door handle twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it. The other doors remain locked.

Comfort Access

Concept

The vehicle can be accessed without activating the remote control.

All you need to do is to have the remote control with you, such as in your pants pocket.

The vehicle automatically detects the remote control when it is in close proximity or in the vehicle's interior.

General information

Comfort Access supports the following functions:

▷ Unlocking and locking the vehicle.

▷ Convenient closing.

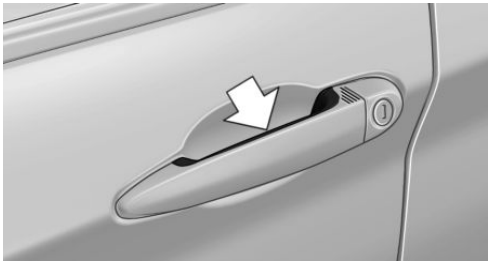
▷ Opening tailgate.

Functional requirements

▷ To lock the vehicle, the remote control must be located outside of the vehicle near the doors.

▷ The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.

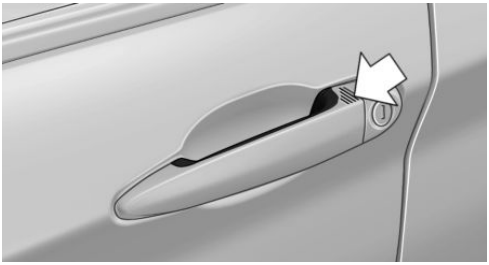
Unlocking



Grasp the door handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control.

Locking



Touch the surface on the door handle of the driver's or front passenger door with your finger for approx. 1 second without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control.

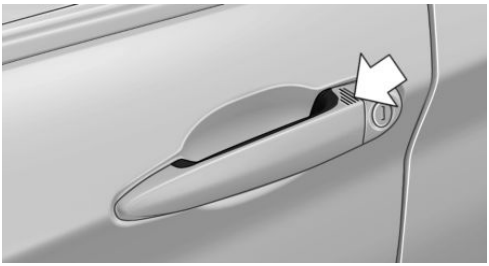
Convenient closing

Safety information

WARNING

With convenient closing, body parts can be jammed. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the doors is clear during convenient closing.◀

Closing



Touch the surface on the door handle of the driver's or front passenger door, arrow, with your finger and hold it there without grasping the door handle.

This corresponds with pressing and holding the button on the remote control.

In addition to locking, the windows and the glass sunroof close and the exterior mirrors fold in.

Open tailgate

General information

If you open the tailgate via Comfort Access, locked doors will not be unlocked.

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Safety information

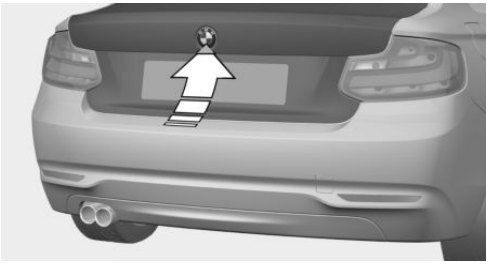
WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

Opening



Press button on the tailgate.

This corresponds with pressing the button on the remote control.

The tailgate is unlocked and can be swung upward.

Malfunction

Remote control detection by the vehicle may malfunction under the following circumstances:

- ▷ The battery of the remote control is discharged. Replace the battery, refer to page 52.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from transmission towers or other equipment with high transmitting power.
- ▷ Shielding of the remote control due to metal objects.

  Do not transport the remote control together with metal objects.
- ▷ Interference of the radio connection from mobile phones or other electronic devices in direct proximity to the remote control.

  Do not transport the remote control together with electronic devices.

In the case of a malfunction, unlock and lock the vehicle using the buttons of the remote control or using the integrated key, refer to page 53.

Tailgate

General information

To avoid locking it in the vehicle, do not place the remote control in the cargo area.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, it is possible to specify whether the doors are also unlocked when unlocking with the remote control. Adjusting the settings, refer to page 60.

The tailgate can only be opened if it is not locked. Separately lock the tailgate, refer to page 57.

Safety information

WARNING

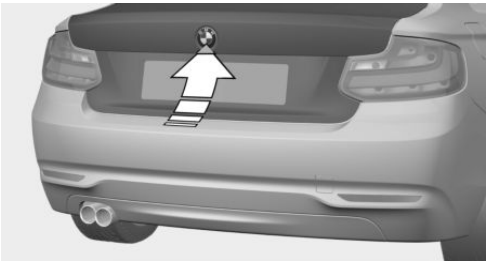
Body parts can be jammed when operating the tailgate. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

NOTE

During opening, the tailgate pivots back and up. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the tailgate is clear during opening and closing.◀

Opening and closing

Opening from the outside



▷ Without Comfort Access: unlock vehicle.

With Comfort Access: unlock the vehicle or have the remote control with you.

Press button on the tailgate.

▷ Press button on the remote control for approx. 1 second.

Depending on the setting, the doors may also be unlocked. Unlocking with the remote control, refer to page 51.

The tailgate opens slightly and can be swung upward.

Opening from the inside

With the vehicle stationary, press the button in the driver's floor area.

Closing

Grasp the recess grip and pull tailgate down.

Locking separately

General information

The switch in the glove compartment decouples the tailgate from the central locking system, so it can no longer be opened.

If the glove compartment is locked with the integrated key, the remote control can be handed over without the integrated key, for instance to a valet parking service. It is then no longer possible for objects to be removed from the cargo area even with the remote control.

Securing

▷ Tailgate secured, arrow 1.

▷ Tailgate not secured, arrow 2.

Slide the switch into the desired position.

Trunk emergency unlocking

Pull the handle inside the cargo area.

The tailgate unlocks.

Driver profile

Concept

In the driver profiles, individual settings for several drivers can be stored and called up again when required.

General information

There are three driver profiles with which personal vehicle settings can be stored. Every remote control has one of these driver profiles assigned.

If the vehicle is unlocked using a remote control, the assigned personal driver profile will be activated. All settings stored in the driver profile are automatically applied.

If several drivers use their own remote control, the vehicle will adjust the personal settings during unlocking. These settings are also restored, if the vehicle has been used in the meantime by a person with a different remote control.

Changes to the settings are automatically stored in the driver profile currently activated.

If another driver profile is selected via iDrive, the settings stored in it will be applied automatically. The new driver profile is assigned to the remote control currently used.

There is an additional guest profile available that is not assigned to any remote control. It can be used to apply settings in the vehicle without changing the personal driver profiles.

Functional requirements

For the system to be able to identify the driver profile associated to a particular driver, the detected remote control must be clearly allocated to the driver.

This is the case when:

- ▷ The driver is only carrying his or her own remote control.
- ▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle.
- ▷ The driver gets into the vehicle through the driver's door.

Settings

The settings for the following systems and functions are stored in the active profile. The scope of storable settings depends on country and equipment.

- ▷ Unlocking and locking.
- ▷ Lights.
- ▷ Climate control.
- ▷ Radio.
- ▷ Instrument cluster.
- ▷ Programmable memory buttons.
- ▷ Volumes, tone.
- ▷ Control Display.
- ▷ Navigation.
- ▷ TV.
- ▷ PDC Park Distance Control.
- ▷ Rearview camera.
- ▷ Driving Dynamics Control.
- ▷ Driver's seat position, exterior mirror position, steering wheel position if applicable.

  Both the positions saved via the seat memory and the last position set are saved.
- ▷ Intelligent Safety.

Profile management

Selecting a driver profile

Regardless of the remote control in use, a different driver profile may be activated. This allows you to call up personal vehicle settings, even if you did not unlock the vehicle with your own remote control.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.
4. "OK"

▷ All settings stored in the called-up driver profile are automatically applied.

▷ The called-up driver profile is assigned to the remote control being used at the time.

▷ If the driver profile is already assigned to a different remote control, this driver profile will apply to both remote controls.

Using a guest profile

The guest profile is for individual settings that are stored in none of the three personal driver profiles.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Drive off (guest)"
4. "OK"

The guest profile cannot be renamed. It is not assigned to the current remote control.

Renaming a driver profile

A personal name can be assigned to the active driver profile to avoid confusion between the driver profiles.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be renamed.
4. "Change driver profile name"
5. Enter profile name.
6. OK Select the symbol.

Resetting a driver profile

The settings of the driver profile currently in use are reset to their factory settings.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be reset.
4. "Reset driver profile"
5. "OK"

Exporting driver profiles

Most settings of the active driver profile can be exported.

Exporting is helpful when storing and retrieving personal settings, for instance before delivering the vehicle to a workshop. The stored driver profiles can be taken into another vehicle.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be exported.
4. "Export driver profile"
5. Select a storage device for exporting the driver profile.

   ▷ "USB device"

   Select USB storage device, as needed, refer to page 39.

▷ Online.

Importing driver profiles

The existing settings of the active driver profile are overwritten with the settings of the imported driver profile.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select the driver profile to be overwritten.

   ⚙ The driver profile marked with this symbol can be overwritten.
4. "Import driver profile"
5. Select a storage device for importing the driver profile.

   ▷ USB storage device: "USB device"

   Select USB storage device as needed.

   ▷ Online.
6. Select the driver profile to be imported.

Displaying driver profiles during start

The driver profiles can be displayed during each start to select the desired profile.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. "Show driver profiles at startup"

System limits

A clear assignment between the remote control and driver may not be possible in the following cases, for example.

▷ The passenger unlocks the vehicle with his or her own remote control, but another person is driving.

▷ The driver unlocks the vehicle via Comfort Access and has multiple remote controls with him or her.

▷ The driver changes, but the vehicle is not locked and unlocked.

▷ Multiple remote controls are located outside of the vehicle.

Settings

General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment and the country version, various settings for opening and closing are possible.

These settings are stored for the driver profile, refer to page 58, currently used.

Unlocking

Doors

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. 🔓 "Driver's door" or 🔓 "All doors"
5. Select desired setting:

   ▷ "Driver's door only"

   Only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked. Pressing again unlocks the entire vehicle.

   ▷ "All doors"

   The entire vehicle is unlocked.

Tailgate

Depending on optional features and country version, this setting is not offered in some cases.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. "Tailgate" or "Tailgate and door(s)"
5. Select desired setting:

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ "Tailgate"

  The tailgate unlocks.
- ▷ "Tailgate and door(s)"

  The tailgate and the doors are unlocked.

Adjusting the last seat and mirror position

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driver profiles"
3. Select driver profile.

   ⚙ The setting can be made for the driver profile marked with this symbol.
4. "Last seat position automatic"

When the vehicle is unlocked, the driver's seat and exterior mirrors resume their last set positions.

The most recent position is independent of the positions saved via the seat memory.

Confirmation signals from the vehicle

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Deactivate or activate the desired confirmation signals.
   - ▷ "Flash for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by two flashes, locking by one.
   - ▷ With alarm system:

     "Acoustic signal for lock/unlock"

     Unlocking is signaled by one honk of the horn.

Automatic locking

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Doors/Key"
4. Select desired setting:
   - ▷ "Lock automatically"

     The vehicle locks automatically after a short period of time if no door is opened after unlocking.
   - ▷ "Lock after starting to drive"

     The vehicle locks automatically after you drive off.

Alarm system

General information

When the vehicle is locked, the vehicle alarm system reacts to the following changes:

- ▷ Unauthorized opening of a door, the hood or the tailgate.
- ▷ Movements in the car's interior.
- ▷ Changes in the vehicle tilt, e. g., during attempts at stealing a wheel or when towing the vehicle.
- ▷ Disconnected battery voltage.

The alarm system signals these changes visually and acoustically:

- ▷ Acoustic alarm.

  Depending on local regulations, the acoustic alarm may be suppressed.
- ▷ By switching on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ By flashing the daytime running lights.

Switching on/off

When you lock and unlock the vehicle with the remote control or with Comfort Access, the alarm system is switched on/off at the same time.

Opening the doors with the alarm system switched on

The alarm system is triggered when a door is opened if the door was unlocked using the integrated key in the door lock.

Switching off the alarm, refer to page 63.

Opening the tailgate with the alarm system switched on

The tailgate can be opened even when the alarm system is switched on.

After the tailgate is closed, it is locked and monitored again provided the doors are locked. The hazard warning system flashes once.

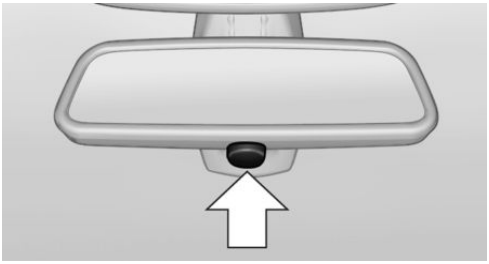
Panic mode

You can trigger the alarm system if you find yourself in a dangerous situation.

- ▷ Press button on the remote control and hold for at least 3 seconds.
- ▷ Briefly press the button on the remote control three times in succession.

To switch off the alarm: press any button.

Indicator light on the interior mirror



- ▷ The indicator light flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  The alarm system is switched on.
- ▷ Indicator light flashes for approx. 10 seconds, then it flashes briefly every 2 seconds:

  Interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor are not active, as doors, hood, or tailgate are not correctly closed. Correctly closed access points are secured.

  When the still open access points are closed, interior motion sensor and tilt alarm sensor will be switched on.
- ▷ The indicator light goes out after unlocking:

  The vehicle has not been tampered with.
- ▷ The indicator light flashes after unlocking until the engine ignition is switched on, but no longer than approx. 5 minutes:

  An alarm has been triggered.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored.

The alarm system responds in situations such as attempts to steal a wheel or when the vehicle is towed.

Interior motion sensor

The windows and the glass sunroof must be closed for the system to function properly.

Avoiding unintentional alarms

General information

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor can trigger an alarm, although no unauthorized action occurred.

Possible situations for an unwanted alarm:

- ▷ In automatic vehicle washes.
- ▷ In duplex garages.
- ▷ During transport on trains carrying vehicles, at sea or on a trailer.
- ▷ With animals in the vehicle.

The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor can be switched off in such situations.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Switching off the tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the remote control button again within 10 seconds as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up for approx. 2 seconds and then continues to flash.

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor are turned off until the vehicle is locked again.

Switching off the alarm

- ▷ Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or switch on the ignition, if needed through emergency detection of remote control, refer to page 53.
- ▷ With Comfort Access:

  If you are carrying the remote control on your person, grasp the door handle on the driver's or front passenger door completely.

Power windows

Safety information

WARNING

When operating the windows, body parts and objects can be jammed. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the windows is clear during opening and closing.◀

Overview

Power windows

Opening

- ▷ Press the switch to the resistance point.

  The window opens while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Press the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 51.

Closing

- ▷ Pull the switch to the resistance point.

  The window closes while the switch is being held.
- ▷ Pull the switch beyond the resistance point.

  The window closes automatically if the door is closed. Pulling again stops the motion.

Closing via Comfort Access, refer to page 55.

Pinch protection system

General information

If closing force exceeds a specific threshold as a window closes, closing is interrupted.

The window opens slightly.

Safety information

WARNING

Accessories on the windows such as antennas can impact jam protection. There is a risk of injury. Do not install accessories in the area of movement of the windows.◀

Closing without the jam protection system

In case of danger from the outside or if ice might prevent normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch past the resistance point and hold it there.

   The window closes with limited jam protection . If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Pull the switch past the resistance point again within approx. 4 seconds and hold it there.

   The window closes without jam protection .

Glass sunroof, electric

General information

The glass sunroof and the sliding visor can be operated together or separately using the same switch.

The glass sunroof is operational when the ignition is switched on.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating the glass sunroof. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the glass sunroof is clear during opening and closing.◀

Overview

Tilting the glass sunroof

Push switch briefly upward.

- ▷ The closed glass sunroof tilts.
- ▷ The opened glass sunroof closes until it is in the tilted position. The sliding visor does not move.

Opening/closing the glass sunroof and sliding visor together

- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction to the resistance point and hold it there.

  Glass sunroof and sliding visor open together while the switch is being held.

  The glass sunroof closes while the switch is being held. The sliding visor can be manually closed.

- ▷ Press the switch in the desired direction past the resistance point.

The glass sunroof and sliding visor open automatically.

The glass sunroof closes automatically. The sliding visor can be manually closed.

Pressing the switch upward stops the motion.

Convenient opening via the remote control, refer to page 51.

Closing by means of Comfort Access, refer to page 55.

Comfort position

If the glass sunroof is not completely opened automatically, the comfort position has been attained. In this position the wind noises in the interior are the least.

If desired, continue the movement by pressing the switch.

Jam protection system

General information

If the closing force exceeds a certain value when closing the glass sunroof, the closing operation is interrupted once the roof reaches the half-open position, or it is stopped when closing from the tilted position. The glass sunroof opens slightly.

Closing from the open position without jam protection

If there is an external danger, proceed as follows:

1. Push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold.

   The glass sunroof closes with limited jam protection. If the closing force exceeds a specific threshold, closing is interrupted.

2. Push the switch forward again past the resistance point and hold until the glass sunroof closes without jam protection. Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Closing from the raised position without jam protection

If there is an external danger, push the switch forward past the resistance point and hold it.

The glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Initializing after a power interruption

General information

After a power failure during the opening or closing process, the glass sunroof can only be operated to a limited extent.

The system can be initialized under the following conditions.

- ▷ The vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ The engine is running.
- ▷ The external temperature is above 41 °F/5 °C.

During initialization, the glass sunroof closes without jam protection.

Make sure that the closing area is clear.

Initializing the system

Press the switch up and hold it until the initialization is complete:

Initialization begins within 15 seconds and is completed when the glass sunroof is completely closed.

Settings

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Sitting safely

An ideal seating position that meets the needs of the occupants can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving.

In the event of an accident, the correct seating position plays an important role. Additionally, observe the following chapters for safe driving:

- ▷ Seats, refer to page 67.
- ▷ Safety belts, refer to page 71.
- ▷ Head restraints, refer to page 72.
- ▷ Airbags, refer to page 117.

Seats

Safety information

WARNING

Seat adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only adjust the seat on the driver's side when the vehicle is stationary.◀

WARNING

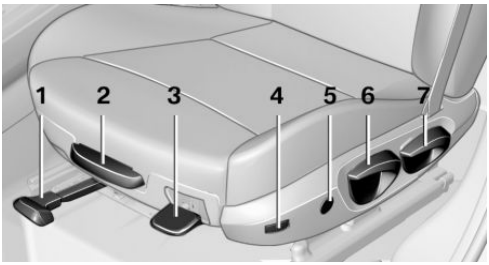
With a backrest inclined too far to the rear, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of sliding under the safety belt in an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Adjust the seat prior to starting the trip. Adjust the backrest so that it is in the most upright position as possible and do not adjust again while driving.◀

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

Manually adjustable seats

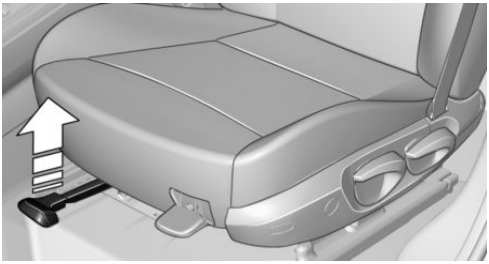
Overview



1 Forward/backward
2 Thigh support
3 Seat tilt
4 Backrest width
5 Lumbar support
6 Height
7 Backrest tilt

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

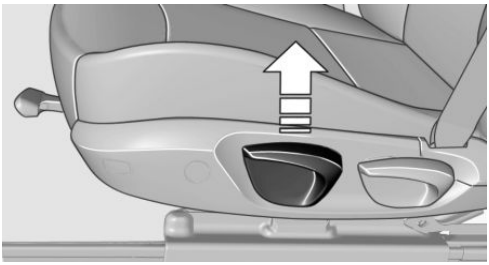
Forward/backward



Pull the lever and slide the seat in the desired direction.

After releasing the lever, move the seat forward or back slightly making sure it engages properly.

Height

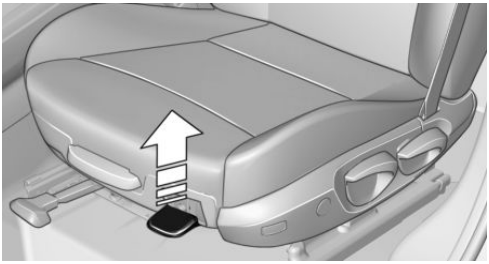


Pull the lever and apply your weight to the seat or lift it off, as necessary.

Backrest tilt

Pull the lever and apply your weight to the backrest or lift it off, as necessary.

Seat tilt



Pull the lever and move the seat to the desired tilt. After releasing the lever, apply your weight to the seat or lift it off to make sure the seat engages properly.

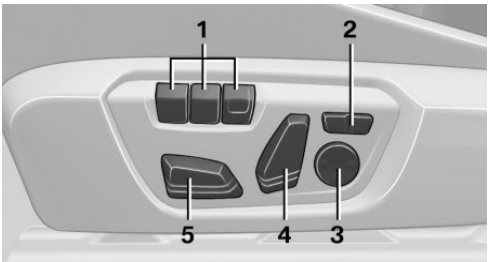
Electrically adjustable seats

General information

The seat setting for the driver's seat is stored for the profile currently used. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 61, is activated for this purpose.

The current seat position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 74.

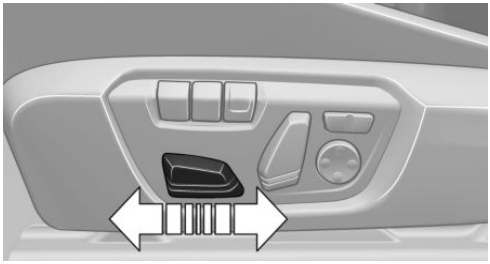
Overview



1 Memory function
2 Backrest width
3 Lumbar support
4 Backrest tilt
5 Forward/backward, height, seat tilt

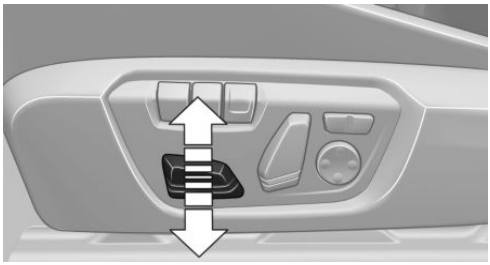
Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Forward/backward



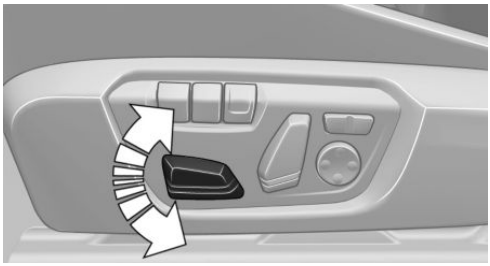
Push switch forward or backward.

Height



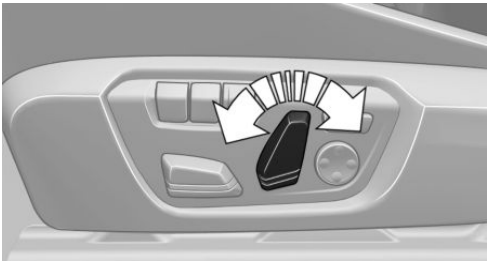
Push switch up or down.

Seat tilt



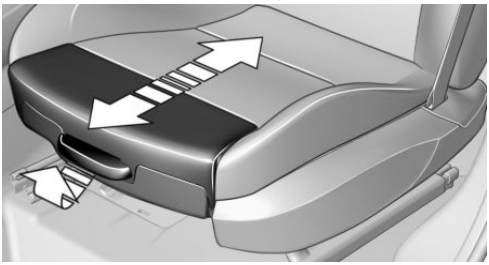
Move switch up or down.

Backrest tilt



Move switch forward or backward.

Thigh support



Pull the lever at the front of the seat and adjust the thigh support.

Lumbar support

The curvature of the seat backrest can be adjusted in a way that it supports the lumbar region of the spine. The lower back and the spine are supported for upright posture.

- ▷ Press the front/rear section of the button:

  The curvature is increased/decreased.
- ▷ Press the upper/lower section of the button:

  The curvature is shifted up/down.

Backrest width

General information

You can change the backrest width by adjusting the side wings of the backrest.

Settings

▷ Press the front section of the button:

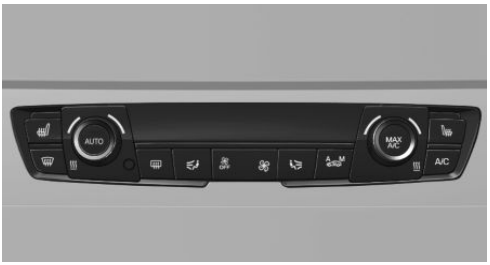
The backrest width decreases.

▷ Press the rear section of the button:

The backrest width increases.

Front seat heating

Overview



Seat heating

Switching on

Press button once for each temperature level.

The maximum temperature is reached when three LEDs are lit.

If the trip is continued within approx. 15 minutes after a stop, seat heating is activated automatically with the temperature selected last.

Switching off

Press and hold the button, until the LEDs go out.

Entering the rear

Safety information

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

WARNING

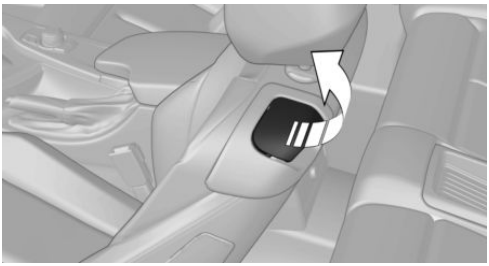
Unexpected movements of the backrest while driving may occur due to an unlocked backrest. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of injury. Fold back and lock the backrests before driving.◀

Manual length adjustment

Comfort entry

The comfort entry contains a memory function for forward/backward and backrest adjustment.

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold backrest forward.
3. Push the seat forward.

Original position

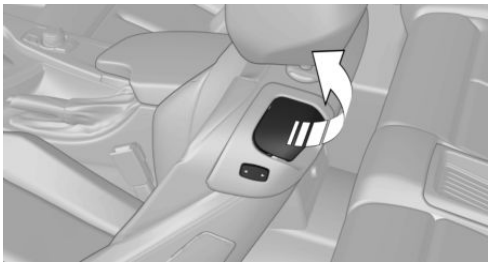
1. Push the seat back into the original position.
2. Fold back the backrest to lock the seat.

Electric forward/backward adjustment

Comfort entry

The comfort entry contains a memory function for forward/backward and backrest adjustment.

1. Pull lever up to the stop.



2. Fold backrest forward.
3. To change the entry area:
   - ▷ Press and hold this button until the seat has moved to the desired position. Releasing the button stops window/roof movement.
   - ▷ Press button briefly. The seat automatically moves to the end position. Pressing again stops the motion.

Original position

1. Moving the seat to its original position:
   - ▷ Press and hold this button until the seat has moved to its original position. Releasing the button stops window/roof movement.
   - ▷ Press button briefly. The seat moves to its original position. Pressing again stops the motion.
2. Fold the backrest back.

Safety belts

Number of safety belts and safety belt buckles

The vehicle is fitted with four safety belts to ensure occupant safety. However, they can only offer protection when adjusted correctly.

General information

Always make sure that safety belts are being worn by all occupants before driving off. Although airbags enhance safety by providing added protection, they are not a substitute for safety belts.

The upper shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted.

Safety information

WARNING

If the safety belt is used to buckle more than one person, the efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts can no longer be ensured. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Infants and children are not allowed on an occupant's lap, but must be transported and secured in designated child restraint systems.◀

WARNING

The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that all occupants are wearing safety belts correctly.◀

WARNING

The protective effect of the safety belts may not be fully functional or fail in the following situations:

- ▷ The safety belts or safety belt buckles are damaged, soiled, or changed in any other way.
- ▷ Belt tensioners or belt retractors were modified.

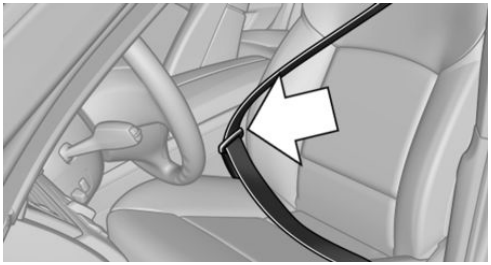
Safety belts can be imperceptibly damaged in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not modify safety belts, safety belt buckles, belt tensioners, belt retractors or belt anchors and keep them clean. Have the safety belts checked after an accident at the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Correct use of safety belts

- ▷ Wear the safety belt twist-free and tight to your body over your lap and shoulders.
- ▷ Wear the safety belt deep on your hips over your lap. The safety belt may not press on your stomach.
- ▷ Do not rub the safety belt against sharp edges, or guide it or jam it in across hard or fragile objects.
- ▷ Avoid thick clothing.
- ▷ Re-tighten the safety belt frequently upward around your upper body.

Buckling the safety belt

1. Slowly guide the safety belt out of the holder when fastening it.
2. Insert the tongue plate into the safety belt buckle. The safety belt buckle must engage audibly.



Unbuckling the safety belt

1. Hold the safety belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the belt buckle.
3. Guide the safety belt back into its roll-up mechanism.

Safety belt reminder for driver's and passenger's seat

Display

The indicator light lights up and a signal sounds. Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Front head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.◀

WARNING

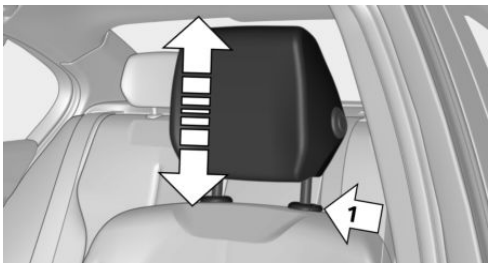
Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

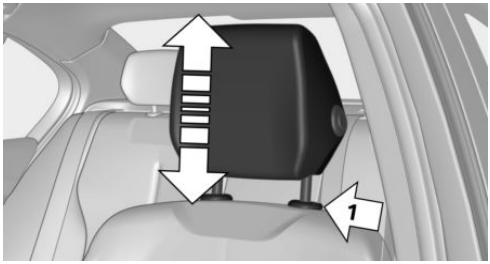
Adjusting the height



- ▷ To raise: push the head restraint up.
- ▷ To lower: press button, arrow 1, and push head restraint down.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Rear head restraints

Safety information

WARNING

A missing protective effect due to removed or not correctly adjusted head restraints can cause injuries in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Before driving, install the removed head restraints on the occupied seats.
- ▷ Adjust the head restraint so its center supports the back of the head at as close to eye level as possible.
- ▷ Adjust the distance so that the head restraint is as close as possible to the back of the head. If necessary, adjust the distance by adjusting the tilt of the backrest.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when moving the head restraint. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement is clear when moving the head restraint.◀

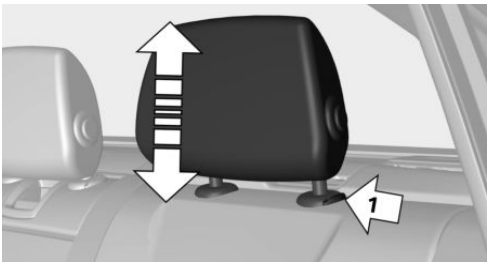
WARNING

Objects on the head restraint reduce the protective effect in the head and neck area. There is a risk of injury.

- ▷ Do not use seat or head restraint covers.
- ▷ Do not hang objects, for instance clothes hangers, directly on the head restraint.
- ▷ Only use accessories that have been determined to be safe for attachment to a head restraint.
- ▷ Do not use any accessories, for instance pillows, while driving.◀

Height

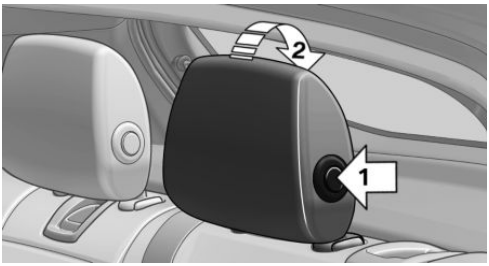
Settings



- To lower: press the button, arrow 1, and push the head restraint down.
- To raise: push the head restraint up.

Folding down the head restraint

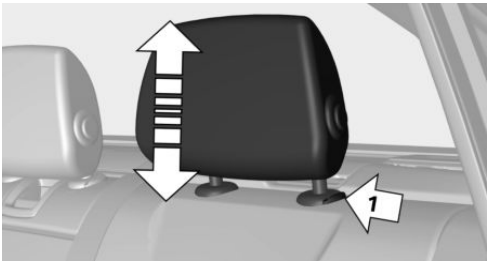
Only fold the head restraint back if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



- To the back: press the button, arrow 1, and fold the head restraint back, arrow 2.
- To the front: fold head restraint forward until the head restraint engages.

Removing

Only remove the head restraint if no one will be sitting in the seat in question.



1. Raise the head restraint up against the resistance.
2. Press the button, arrow 1, and pull the head restraint out completely.

Memory function

Concept

The following settings can be stored and, if necessary, retrieved using the memory function:

- Seat position.
- Exterior mirror position.

General information

Two memory locations with different settings can be set for each driver profile, refer to page 58.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following settings are not stored:

- Backrest width.
- Lumbar support.

Safety information

WARNING

Using the memory function while driving can lead to unexpected movements of the seat. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Only retrieve the memory function when the vehicle is stationary.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

Overview

Storing

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Set the desired position.
3. SET Press button. The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press selected button 1 or 2 while the LED is lit. The LED goes out.

SET Button was pressed inadvertently: Press button again.

The LED goes out.

Calling up settings

The stored position is called up automatically.

Press selected button 1 or 2.

The procedure stops when a switch for setting the seat or one of the memory buttons is pressed.

While driving, the seat position adjustment on the driver's side is interrupted after a short time.

Calling up of a seat position deactivated

After a brief period, calling up stored seat positions is deactivated to save battery power.

To reactivate calling up of a seat position:

- ▷ Open and close the door or tailgate.
- ▷ Press a button on the remote control.
- ▷ Press the Start/Stop button.

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

General information

The mirror on the front passenger side is more curved than the driver's side mirror.

The mirror setting is stored for the driver profile currently in use. When the vehicle is unlocked via the remote control, the position is automatically retrieved if the function, refer to page 61, is activated for this purpose.

The current exterior mirror position can be stored using the memory function, refer to page 74.

Safety information

WARNING

Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. The distance to the traffic behind could be incorrectly estimated, for instance while changing lanes. There is a risk of an accident. Estimate the distance to the traffic behind by looking over your shoulder.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Overview

1 Settings
2 Selecting a mirror, Automatic Curb Monitor
3 Folding in and out

Selecting a mirror

To change over to the other mirror:

Slide the switch.

Adjusting electrically

Press button.

The mirror movement follows the button movement.

Malfunction

In case of an electrical malfunction, adjust the mirror by pressing the edges of the mirror glass.

Folding in and out

NOTE

Depending on the vehicle width, the vehicle can be damaged in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Before washing, fold in the mirrors by hand or with the button.◀

Press button.

Folding is only possible up to a speed of approx. 15 mph/20 km/h.

Folding the mirrors in and out is helpful in the following situations:

▷ In vehicle washes.

▷ On narrow roads.

Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx.
25 mph/40 km/h.

Automatic heating

Both exterior mirrors are automatically heated whenever the engine is running.

Automatic dimming feature

The exterior mirror on the driver's side is automatically dimmed. Photocells in the interior mirror are used to control this.

Automatic Curb Monitor, exterior mirror

Concept

If reverse gear is engaged, the mirror glass on the front passenger side is tilted downward. This improves your view of the curb and other low-lying obstacles when parking, for instance.

Activating

1. Slide the switch to the driver's side mirror position.
2. Engage selector lever position R.

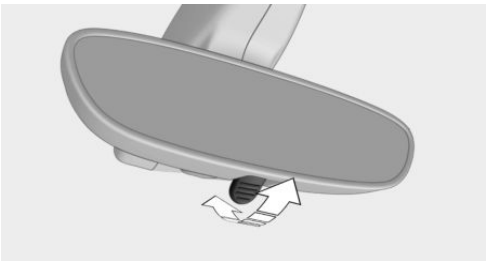
Deactivating

Slide the switch to the passenger's side mirror position.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

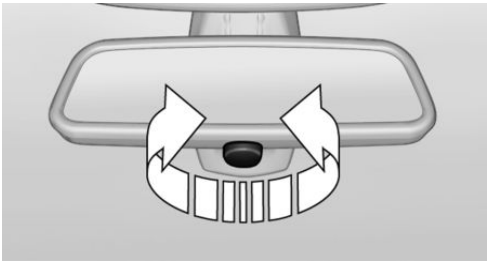
Interior mirror, manually dimmable

Flip lever



To reduce the blinding effect of the interior mirror, flip the lever forward.

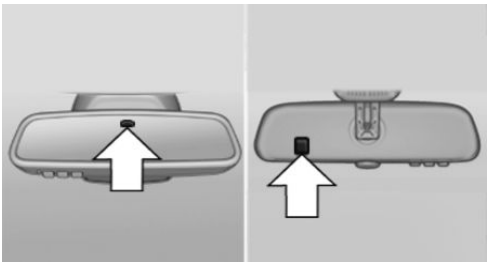
Turn knob



Turn the knob to reduce the blinding effect by the interior mirror.

Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature

Overview



Photocells are used for control:

- ▷ In the mirror glass.
- ▷ On the back of the mirror.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Keep the photocells clean.
- ▷ Do not cover the area between the inside rearview mirror and the windshield.

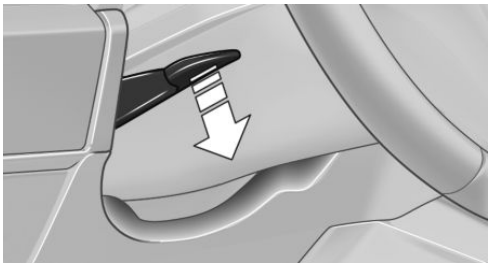
Steering wheel

Safety information

WARNING

Steering wheel adjustments while driving can lead to unexpected steering wheel movements. Vehicle control could be lost. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is stationary only.◀

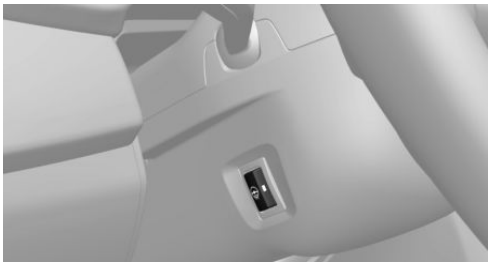
Settings



1. Fold the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel to the preferred height and angle to suit your seating position.
3. Fold the lever back up.

Heated steering wheel

Overview



Heated steering wheel

Switching on/off

Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

Transporting children safely

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

The right place for children

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

Always transport children in the rear seat

General information

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is in the rear seat.

Transport children younger than 13 years of age or shorter than 5 ft/150 cm only in the rear seat in suitable child restraint systems designed for the age, weight and size of the child. Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, weight, and size.

Safety information

WARNING

The safety belt cannot be fastened correctly on children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm without suitable additional child restraint systems. The efficacy of safety gear, including safety belts, can be limited or lost when safety belts are fastened incorrectly. An incorrectly fastened safety belt can cause additional injuries, for instance in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Secure children shorter than 5 ft, 150 cm using suitable child restraint systems.◀

Children on the front passenger seat

General information

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated. Automatic deactivation of front-seat passenger airbags, refer to page 119.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Safety information

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

Installing child restraint systems

General information

Pay attention to the specifications of the child restraint system manufacturer when selecting, installing, and using child restraint systems.

Safety information

WARNING

The protective effect of damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems can be limited or lost. A child can e.g.,not sufficiently restrained, for instance in the event of an accident or braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have damaged child restraint systems or of child restraint systems exposed to an accident and their fastening systems checked and possibly replaced by the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

WARNING

The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

On the front passenger seat

Deactivating airbags

WARNING

Active front-seat passenger airbags can injure a child in a child restraint system when the airbags are activated. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the front-seat passenger airbags are deactivated and that the PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF indicator lamp lights up.◀

After installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, make sure that the front, knee and side airbags on the front passenger side are deactivated.

Deactivate the front-seat passenger airbags automatically, refer to page 119.

Seat position and height

Before installing a child restraint system, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and bring it as far up as possible to obtain the best possible position for the belt and to offer optimal protection in the event of an accident.

If the upper anchorage of the safety belt is located in front of the belt guide of the child seat, move the passenger seat carefully forward un-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

til the best possible belt guide position is reached.

Backrest width

Adjustable backrest width: before installing a child restraint system in the front passenger seat, open the backrest width completely. Do not change the backrest width again and do not call up a memory position.

Child seat security

The rear safety belts and the front passenger safety belt can be permanently locked to fasten child restraint systems.

Locking the safety belt

1. Pull out the belt strap completely.
2. Secure the child restraint system with the safety belt.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in and pull it tight against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Unlocking the safety belt

1. Unbuckle the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt strap to be pulled in completely.

LATCH child restraint fixing system

General information

LATCH: Lower Anchors and Tether for Children.

Pay attention to the operating and safety information of the child restraint system manufacturer when installing and using LATCH child restraint fixing systems.

Mounts for the lower LATCH anchors

The lower anchors may be used to attach the CRS to the vehicle seat up to a combined child and CRS weight of 65 lb/30 kg when the child is restrained by the internal harnesses.

Safety information

WARNING

If the LATCH child restraint fixing systems are not correctly engaged, the protective effect of the LATCH child restraint fixing system can be limited. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the lower anchors are securely engaged and that the LATCH child restraint fixing system fits securely against the backrest.◀

Position

Symbol	Meaning
	The corresponding symbol shows the mounts for the lower LATCH anchors. Seats equipped with lower anchors are marked with a pair, 2, of LATCH symbols.

Before installing LATCH child restraint fixing systems

Pull the safety belt away from the area of the child restraint system.

Assembly of LATCH child restraint fixing systems

1. Install child restraint system, see manufacturer's information.
2. Ensure that both LATCH anchors are properly connected.

Child restraint systems with tether strap

Safety information

WARNING

If the upper retaining strap is incorrectly used for the child restraint system, the protective effect can be reduced. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not guided across sharp edges and without twisting to the upper retaining strap.◀

WARNING

If the rear backrest is not locked, the protective effect of the child restraint system is limited or there is none. In particular situations, for instance braking maneuvers or in case of an accident, the rear backrest can fold forward. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the rear backrests are locked.◀

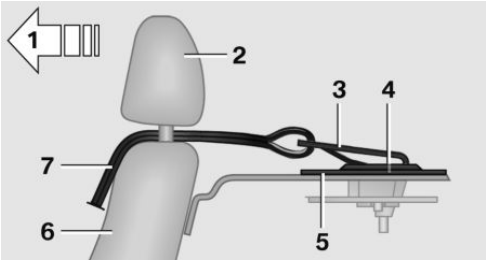
NOTE

The mounting points for the upper retaining straps of child restraint systems are only provided for these retaining straps. When other objects are mounted, the anchors can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only mount child restraint systems to the upper retaining straps.◀

Anchors

The respective symbol shows the anchor for the upper retaining strap. Seats with an upper top tether are marked with this symbol. It can be found on the rear seat backrest or the rear window shelf.

Routing the retaining strap



1 Direction of travel
2 Head restraint
3 Hook for upper retaining strap
4 Anchor
5 Rear window shelf
6 Seat backrest
7 Upper retaining strap

Attaching the upper retaining strap to the anchor

1. Remove the anchor cover.
2. Raise the head restraint.
3. Guide the upper retaining strap between the supports of the head restraint.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

4. Attach the hook of the retaining strap to the anchor.
5. Tighten the retaining strap by pulling it down.
6. Lower and lock head restraints as needed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Start/Stop button

Concept

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the ignition on or off and starts the engine.

M double-clutch transmission: the engine starts with the brake pedal pressed when you press the Start/Stop button.

Manual transmission: the engine starts with the clutch pedal pressed when the Start/Stop button is pressed.

Ignition on

M double-clutch transmission: press the Start/Stop button, and do not press on the brake pedal at the same time.

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button without stepping on the clutch pedal.

All vehicle systems are ready for operation.

Most of the indicator/warning lights in the instrument cluster light up for a varied length of time.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Ignition off

M double-clutch transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the brake.

Manual transmission: press the Start/Stop button again without stepping on the clutch pedal.

All indicator lights in the instrument cluster go out.

To save battery power when the engine is off, switch off the ignition and any unnecessary electronic systems/power consumers.

Safety measures

When switching off the ignition, the transmission position P is selected automatically if the selector lever position D or R is selected.

The ignition is switched off automatically in the following situations while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is off:

- ▷ When locking the vehicle, and when the low beams are switched on.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.
- ▷ When opening or closing the driver door, if the driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the low beams are switched off.
- ▷ While the driver's safety belt is unbuckled with driver's door open and low beams off.

The low beams switch to parking lights after some minutes of no use.

Radio-ready state

General information

In the radio-ready state, certain power consumers remain ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Activating

With the engine running, press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine is not running and the ignition is switched on: the system automatically activates radio-ready state when the door is opened if the lights are switched off or the daytime running lights are switched on.

The radio-ready state remains active if, for instance the ignition is automatically switched off for the following reasons:

- ▷ Opening or closing the driver's door.
- ▷ Unfastening of the driver's safety belt.
- ▷ When automatically switching from low beams to parking lights.

Switching off automatically

The radio-ready state is switched off automatically in the following situations:

- ▷ If the ignition is switched off manually with the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ After approx. 8 minutes.
- ▷ When the vehicle is locked using the central locking system.
- ▷ Shortly before the battery is discharged completely, so that the engine can still be started.

Starting the engine

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

In the case of repeated starting attempts or repeated starting in quick succession, the fuel is not burned or is inadequately burned. The catalytic converter can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid repeated starting in quick succession.◀

M double-clutch transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Manual transmission

Starting the engine

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift to neutral.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

The ignition is activated automatically for a brief time and is stopped as soon as the engine starts.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Engine stop

Safety information

WARNING

Unattended children or animals can cause the vehicle to move and endanger themselves and traffic, e.g., due to the following actions:

- ▷ Pressing the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ Releasing the parking brake.
- ▷ Opening and closing the doors or windows.
- ▷ Engaging selector lever position N.
- ▷ Using vehicle equipment.

There is a risk of accidents or injuries. Do not leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. Take the remote control with you when exiting and lock the vehicle.◀

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

M double-clutch transmission

Switching off the engine

1. Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.
2. Press the Start/Stop button.

   The engine is switched off.

   The radio-ready state is switched on.
3. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission

Switching off the engine

1. With the vehicle at a standstill, press the Start/Stop button.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Auto Start/Stop function

Concept

The Auto Start/Stop function helps save fuel. The system switches off the engine during a stop, for instance in traffic congestion or at traffic lights. The ignition remains switched on. The engine starts automatically for driving off.

The Auto Start/Stop function is only available in the COMFORT or TRACTION driving programs, refer to page 137.

General information

After every start of the engine using the Start/Stop button, the Auto Start/Stop function is in the last selected state. When the Auto Start/Stop function is active, it is available when the vehicle is traveling faster than about 3 mph/5 km/h.

Engine stop

Functional requirements

The engine is switched off automatically during a stop under the following conditions:

M double-clutch transmission:

- ▷ The selector lever is in selector lever position D.
- ▷ The brake pedal remains depressed while the vehicle is stopped.

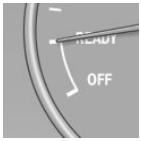
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

Manual transmission:

- Neutral is engaged and the clutch pedal is not pressed.
- The driver's safety belt is buckled or the driver's door is closed.

The air flow from the air conditioner is reduced when the engine is switched off.

Displays in the instrument cluster



The READY display in the tachometer signals that the Auto Start/Stop function is ready to start the engine automatically.

The display indicates that the conditions for an automatic engine stop have not been met.

Functional limitations

The engine is not switched off automatically in the following situations:

- In case of a steep downhill grade.
- External temperature too low.
- The external temperature is high and automatic climate control is running.
- The car's interior has not yet been heated or cooled to the required level.
- The engine is not yet at operating temperature.
- The wheels are at a sharp angle or the steering wheel is being turned.
- After driving in reverse.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.
- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- At higher elevations.
- The hood is unlocked.
- Stop-and-go traffic.
- Use of fuel with high ethanol content.

Starting the engine

The engine starts automatically under the following conditions:

- M double-clutch transmission: by releasing the brake pedal.
- Manual transmission: clutch pedal is pressed.

After the engine starts, accelerate as usual.

Safety mode

After the engine switches off automatically, it will not start again automatically if any one of the following conditions are met:

- The driver's safety belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is open.
- The hood was unlocked.

Some indicator lights light up for a varied length of time.

The engine can only be started via the Start/Stop button.

Functional limitations

Even if driving off was not intended, the deactivated engine starts up automatically in the following situations:

- Excessive warming of the car's interior when the air conditioning is switched on.
- The steering wheel is turned.
- Double-clutch transmission: change from selector lever position D to N, R or D/S.
- M double-clutch transmission: accelerating while simultaneously applying the brake.
- The vehicle begins rolling.
- Where there is a risk of window condensation when the automatic climate control is switched on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- Vehicle battery is heavily discharged.
- Excessive cooling of the car's interior when the heating is switched on.
- Low brake vacuum pressure; this can occur, for instance if the brake pedal is depressed a number of times in succession.

Preventing an automatic engine stop with aM double-clutch transmission

Concept

To make it possible to drive off very quickly, such as at an intersection, the automatic engine stop can be actively prevented.

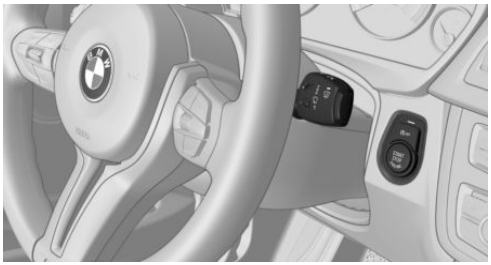
Preventing an engine stop using the brake pedal

The engine stop can be actively prevented within one second after the vehicle comes to a standstill:

- Immediately after the vehicle comes to a standstill, briefly press the brake pedal forcefully.
- Then press the brake pedal with normal braking force.

Activating/deactivating the system manually

Using the button



Press button.

- LED comes on: auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

  The engine is started during an automatic engine stop.

  The engine can only be stopped or started via the Start/Stop button.
- LED goes out: auto Start/Stop function is activated.

Switching off the vehicle during an automatic engine stop

During an automatic engine stop, the vehicle can be switched off permanently, for instance when leaving it.

M double-clutch transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.

   Selector lever position P is engaged automatically.
2. Set the parking brake.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the Start/Stop button. The ignition is switched off. The Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Set the parking brake.

Engine start as usual via Start/Stop button.

Automatic deactivation

In certain situations, the Auto Start/Stop function is deactivated automatically for safety reasons, e.g., if no driver is detected.

Malfunction

The Auto Start/Stop function no longer switches off the engine automatically. A Check Control message is displayed. It is possible to continue driving. Have the system checked by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Parking brake

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

Applying

The lever automatically engages after being pulled up.

BRAKE The indicator lamp lights up red. The parking brake is set.

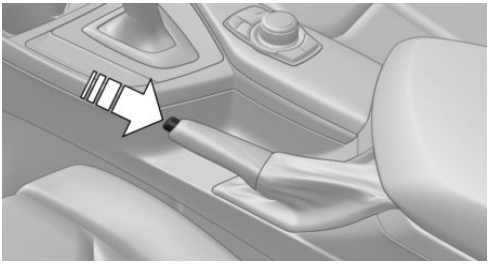
Lower lamp: indicator lamp in Canadian models

If for once use during driving is required, engage the parking brake slightly and hold the button down.

To prevent corrosion and one-sided brake action, lightly apply the parking brake periodically while coasting, if traffic conditions permit.

The brake lights will not light up if the parking brake is set.

Releasing



Raise lever slightly, press the button and guide the lever down.

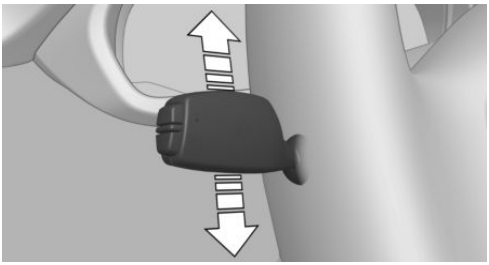
Turn signal, high beams, headlight flasher

Turn signal

Turn signal in exterior mirror

When driving and during operation of the turn signals or hazard warning system, do not fold in the exterior mirrors, so that the signal lights on the exterior mirror are easy to see.

Using turn signals



Press the lever past the resistance point.

Triple turn signal activation

Lightly tap the lever up or down.

The turn signal flashes three times.

The function can be activated or deactivated.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "One-touch turn signal"
6. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Signaling briefly

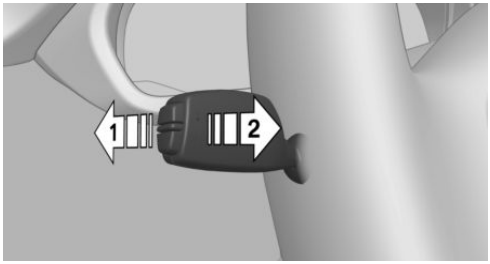
Press the lever to the resistance point and hold it there for as long as you want the turn signal to flash.

Malfunction

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

High beams, headlight flasher

Push the lever forward or pull it backward.



- ▷ High beams on, arrow 1.
- ▷ High beams off/headlight flasher, arrow 2.

Washer/wiper system

General information

Do not use the wipers if the windshield is dry, as this may damage the wiper blades or cause them to become worn more quickly.

Safety information

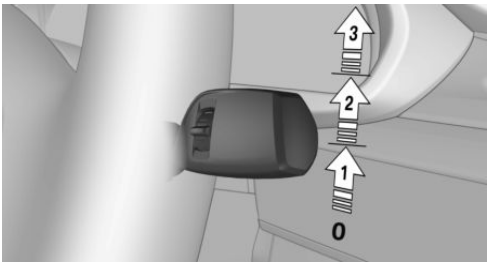
WARNING

If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

NOTE

If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Switching on

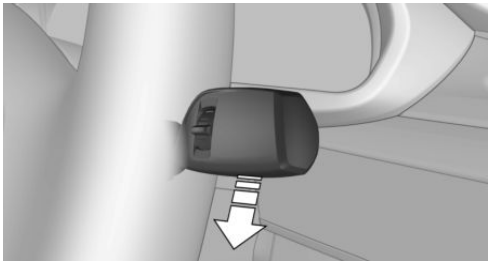


Press the lever up until the desired position is reached.

- ▷ Resting position of the wipers, position 0.
- ▷ Intermittent operation or rain sensor, position 1.
- ▷ Normal wiper speed, position 2.
- ▷ Fast wiper speed, position 3.

When travel is interrupted with the wiper system switched on: when travel continues, the wipers resume at their previous speed.

Switching off and brief wipe



Press the lever down.

- ▷ Switching off: press the lever down until it reaches its standard position.
- ▷ Brief wipe: press the lever down from the standard position.

  The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Interval mode or rain sensor

Concept

The rain sensor automatically controls the time between wipes depending on the intensity of the rainfall.

General information

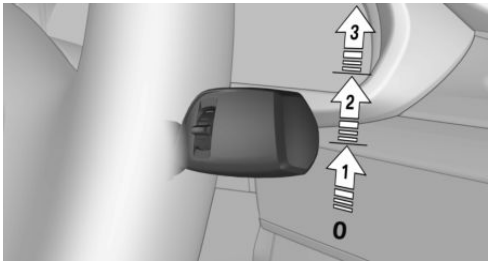
The sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior mirror. Without the rain sensor, the frequency of the wiper operation is preset.

Safety information

NOTE

If the rain sensor is activated, the wipers can accidentally start moving in vehicle washes. There is a risk of property damage. Deactivate the rain sensor in vehicle washes.◀

Activating/deactivating

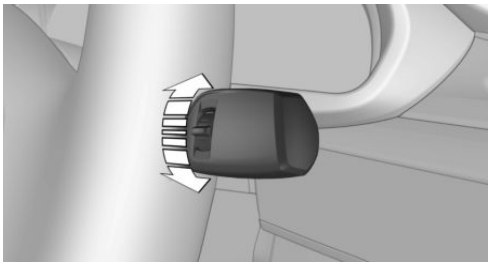


Press the lever up once from its standard position, arrow 1.

Wiping is started.

The LED in the wiper lever is illuminated.

Setting the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor



Turn the thumbwheel to adjust the frequency or sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Up: short interval or high sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Down: long interval or low sensitivity of the rain sensor.

Windshield and headlight washer system

Safety information

WARNING

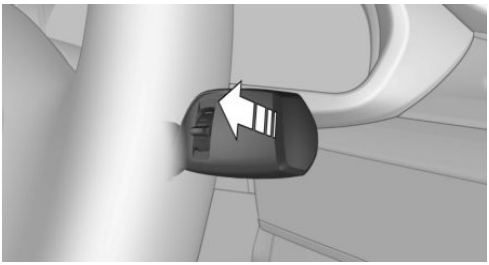
The washer fluid can freeze onto the window at low temperatures and obstruct the view. There is a risk of an accident. Only use

the washer systems, if the washer fluid cannot freeze. Use antifreeze, if needed.◀

NOTE

When the washer fluid reservoir is empty, the wash pump cannot work as intended. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use the washer system when the washer fluid reservoir is empty.◀

Cleaning the windshield



Pull the lever.

The system sprays washer fluid on the windshield and activates the wipers briefly.

In addition, the headlights are cleaned at regular intervals when the vehicle's lights are switched on.

Windshield washer nozzles

The washer jets are automatically heated whenever the ignition is switched on.

Fold-away position of the wipers

Concept

The wipers can be folded away from the windshield in the fold-away position.

General information

Important, e.g., when changing the wiper blades or when folding out under frosty conditions.

Safety information

WARNING

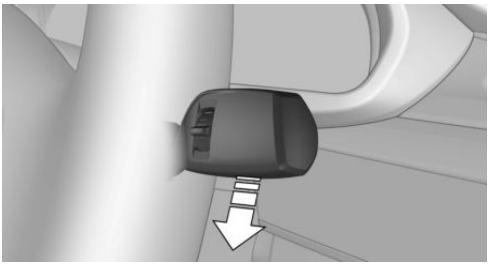
If the wipers start moving in the folded away state, body parts can be jammed or damage may occur to parts of the vehicle. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the vehicle is switched off when the wipers are in the folded away state and the wipers are folded in when switching on.◀

NOTE

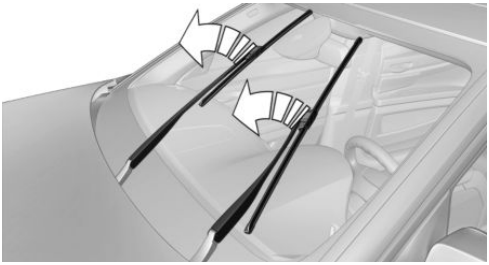
If the wipers are frozen to the windshield, the wiper blades can be torn off and the wiper motor can overheat when switching on. There is a risk of damage to property. Defrost the windshield prior to switching the wipers on.◀

Folding away the wipers

1. Switch the ignition on and off again.
2. Press and hold the wiper level down, until the wipers stop in a close to vertical position.



3. Fold the wipers all the way away from the windshield.



Folding down the wipers

After the wipers are folded back down, the wiper system must be reactivated.

1. Fold the wipers back down onto the windshield.
2. Switch on the ignition.
3. Push wiper lever down. Wipers return to their resting position and are ready again for operation.

Washer fluid

General information

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Use a mixture of tap water and windshield washer concentrate. If desired, a windshield washer concentrate containing antifreeze can be used.

Recommended minimum fill quantity:
0.2 US gal/1 liter.

Safety information

WARNING

Some antifreeze agents can contain harmful substances and are flammable. There is a risk of fire and a risk of injury. Observe the instructions on the containers. Keep antifreeze away from ignition sources. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.

United States: the washer fluid mixture ratio is regulated by the U.S. EPA and many individual states; do not exceed the allowable washer fluid dilution ratio limits that apply. Follow the usage instructions on the washer fluid container.

Use of BMW's Windshield Washer Concentrate or the equivalent is recommended.◄

WARNING

Washer fluid can ignite and catch fire on contact with hot engine parts. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Only add washer fluid when the engine is cooled down. Next, fully close the lid of the washer fluid reservoir.◄

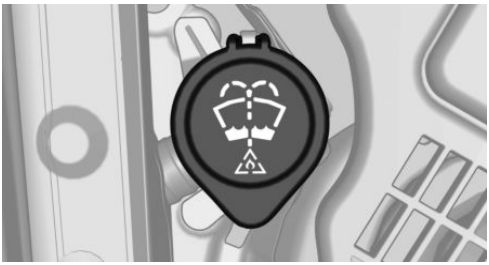
NOTE

Silicon-containing additives in the washer fluid for the water-repelling effect on the windows can lead to damage to the washing system. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add silicon-containing additives to the washer fluid.◄

NOTE

Mixing different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze can damage the washing system. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not mix different windshield washer concentrates or antifreeze. Follow the information and mixing ratios provided on the containers.◄

Overview



The washer fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment.

Malfunction

The use of undiluted windshield washer concentrate or alcohol-based antifreeze can lead to incorrect readings at temperatures below +5 °F/-15 °C.

Manual transmission

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

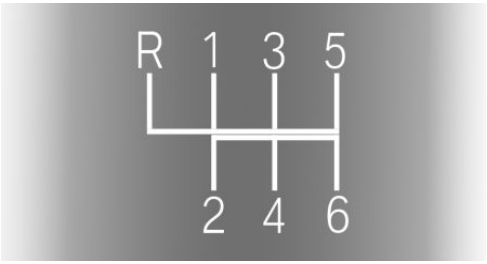
In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- ▷ Set the parking brake.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- ▷ On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◀

NOTE

When shifting to a lower gear, excessive speeds can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. When shifting into 5th or 6th gear, press the gearshift lever to the right.◀

Schematic diagram



- ▷ 1 – 6: forward gears
- ▷ R: reverse

Shifting

General information

Depending on the engine installation, the engine speed during a shifting operation is adjusted automatically as required for harmonious and dynamic gear shifting.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

To overcome the resistance push the gearshift lever dynamically to the left and engage reverse gear with a forward shifting movement.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press on the clutch pedal and shift out of a forward gear or reverse.
3. Release the parking brake.

M double-clutch transmission with Drivelogic

General information

The M double-clutch transmission with Drivelogic is an automatic shift transmission with two clutches and partial transmissions in which the gears can be changed without interrupting the tractive force.

The operation is via the selector lever or two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

Functions

- ▷ Drive mode or Sequential mode.
- ▷ Various drive programs, Drivelogic.
- ▷ Automatic downshifting and protection from misshifting even in sequential mode.
- ▷ Launch Control.
- ▷ Low Speed Assistant.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Safety information

WARNING

An unsecured vehicle can begin to move and possibly roll away. There is a risk of an accident. Before exiting, secure the vehicle against rolling.

In order to ensure that the vehicle is secured against rolling away, observe the following:

- Set the parking brake.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, turn the front wheels in the direction of the curb.
- On uphill grades or on a downhill slope, also secure the vehicle, e.g., with a wheel chock.◂

Selector lever, selector lever positions

Overview

- R: reverse gear.
- N: neutral.
- Center position, forward position.
- +: manual upshifting.
- -: manual downshifting.
- D/S: switch between drive mode and sequential mode.

Engaging a selector lever position

Press on the brake pedal and pull or push the selector lever in the corresponding direction.

As soon as the selector lever is released, it reverts to the center position. In position R, the selector lever locks.

The engaged selector lever position is displayed in the instrument cluster and on the selector lever.

If a selector lever position is engaged, the vehicle may start rolling, after the brake is released, for instance on downhill slopes. Thus, drive off immediately after releasing the brake.

Use the Slow Speed Assistant for maneuvering and during stop-and-go traffic.

Low Speed Assistant

Concept

The Low Speed Assistant gives assistance at very low speeds. The vehicle moves at walking speed.

This can also be used for rocking the vehicle in the snow. To do this, switch between reverse gear and forward gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

Safety information

NOTE

When using the function and simultaneously stepping on the brake pedal for a longer time, the transmission can overheat. There is a risk of property damage. When using the function, do not brake for a longer period.◂

Activating

1. Engage a driving position.
2. Briefly tap the accelerator pedal.

In 1st and 2nd gear and in reverse, the vehicle rolls at minimum speed.

Deactivating

Apply the brakes until the vehicle comes to a stop.

Flashing display on the selector lever of the double clutch transmission

The actually engaged transmission position can deviate from the selector lever position in

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

some situations. The display in the selector lever flashes.

Observe the display in the instrument cluster in these cases.

D is Drive mode

In Drive mode, all forward gears are automatically changed.

Kickdown: for maximum acceleration, for instance when passing. To do this, depress the accelerator pedal past the resistance point.

Switch to Sequential mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever, or push the selector lever in the D/S direction.

S is Sequential mode

Use the shift paddles or the selector lever to upshift or downshift without letting off the gas.

- ▷ Shortly before falling below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission is automatically downshifted.
- ▷ Upshifting or downshifting is done only if the rpm and vehicle speed are appropriate.

  E.g., there is no downshifting if the engine speed is too high.
- ▷ Kickdown: the lowest possible gear is selected by simultaneously operating the kickdown and the left shift paddle or selector lever.
- ▷ It is also possible to start out in 2nd gear, for instance on icy roads.

Switch to Drive mode: push selector lever in D/S direction.

Reverse R

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

It is also possible to rock the vehicle up to 6 mph/10 km/h. To do this, switch between forward gear and reverse gear without stepping on the brakes in the process.

N is Neutral

The vehicle may roll in selector lever position N, for instance in vehicle washes, refer to page 225.

P Park

The drive wheels are blocked.

P is engaged automatically:

- ▷ After the engine is switched off when the vehicle is in radio-ready state, refer to page 84, or when the ignition is switched off, refer to page 84, and when position R or D is set.
- ▷ With the ignition is off, if position N is set.

Rolling or pushing the vehicle

General information

In some situations, the vehicle is to roll without its own power for a short distance, for instance in a vehicle wash, or be pushed.

Engaging selector lever position N

1. Start the engine while pressing on the brake pedal.
2. If necessary, release the parking brake.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Engage selector lever position N.
5. Switch the engine off.

   In this way, the ignition remains switched on, and a Check-Control message is displayed.

   The vehicle may roll.

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch drive-ready state off in vehicle washes.◀

Irrespective of the ignition, the selector lever position P is automatically engaged after approx. 15 minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Displays in the instrument cluster

The selector lever position is displayed, for example: P.

Information

When the external temperature is very low, the display may not work. Current driving direction is recognizable at the engaged selector lever position.

Gear change

General information

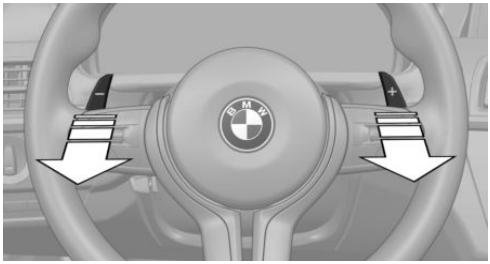
Shifting in Sequential mode possible.

A shift in Drive mode causes a switch to Sequential mode.

Using the selector lever

- To shift up: pull the selector lever rearwards.
- To shift down: press the selector lever forward.

Using the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Shift up: pull right shift paddle.
- Shift down: pull left shift paddle.

Drivelogic

Concept

Using Drivelogic, the characteristics of the hybrid system can be adjusted. For this purpose, different driving programs are available in Drive and Sequential mode.

The driving programs can be programmed using Driving Dynamics Control.

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Driving programs

Drive mode

Choice of three driving programs:

- COMFORT: efficient driving.
- SPORT: sporty driving.
- SPORT+: consistently sporty driving.

Sequential mode

Choice of three driving programs:

- COMFORT: comfortable shifting operations.
- SPORT: sporty, fast shifting operations.
- SPORT+: maximum shifting speed, Launch Control, refer to page 98.

Activating

Activate program via the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 137, button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Launch Control

Concept

Launch Control enables optimum acceleration on surfaces with good traction.

General information

The use of Launch Control causes premature component wear since this function represents a very heavy load for the vehicle.

Do not use Launch Control during the break-in, refer to page 173, period.

Requirements

Launch Control is available when the engine is warmed up, that is, after uninterrupted driving of at least 6 miles/10 km.

To start with Launch Control do not steer the steering wheel.

Activate Launch Control

1. Deactivate Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 135.
2. Select Sequential mode with gear 1.
3. With the engine running, apply the brake with the left foot.
4. Fully depress the accelerator pedal.

   The starting engine speed adjusts.
5. If necessary, change the starting engine speed by 500 rpm via cruise control.
6. Release the brake, the vehicle accelerates. Continue to depress the accelerator pedal.

   Upshifting occurs automatically as long as the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

Launch Control is available again only after a certain distance has been driven.

System limits

This transmission has an overheating protection mechanism, which protects the clutch from extreme stress.

- ▷ Indicator lamp lights up yellow: transmission too hot.

  Avoid high engine stress and frequent starts.
- ▷ Indicator lamp lights up red: transmission is overheating.

  Further driving at a moderate pace is possible. At the next opportunity, stop the vehicle, shut off the engine and allow the transmission to cool down.

Avoid fast starts, and on inclines did not accelerate lightly while letting the clutch slip; otherwise, the transmission may overheat.

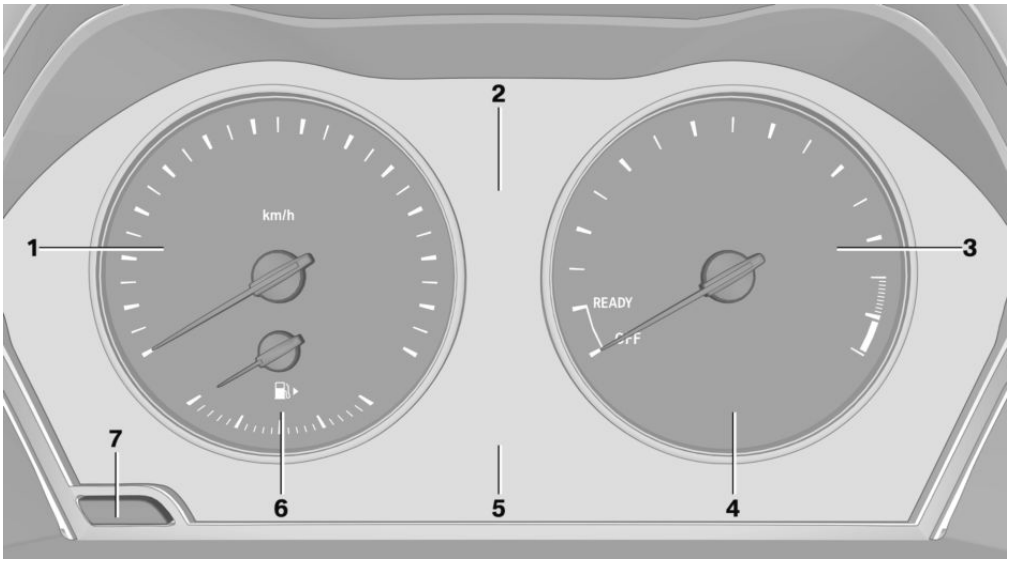
During traffic jams or at very low speeds, use the Low Speed Assistant, refer to page 95.

Displays

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview, instrument cluster



1 Speedometer
2 Messages, for instance Check Control
3 Tachometer 103
4 Current fuel consumption
5 Electronic displays
6 Fuel gauge 103
7 Reset miles 103

Check Control

Concept

The Check Control system monitors functions in the vehicle and notifies you of malfunctions in the monitored systems.

General information

A Check Control message is displayed as a combination of indicator or warning lights and SMS text messages in the instrument cluster.

In addition, an acoustic signal may sound and an SMS text message may appear on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Indicator/warning lights

General information

The indicator and warning lights in the instrument cluster can light up in a variety of combinations and colors.

Several of the lights are checked for proper functioning and light up temporarily when the engine is started or the ignition is switched on.

Red lights

Safety belt reminder

Safety belt on the driver's side is not buckled. For some country-specific models: passenger belt is not worn or objects are detected on the front passenger seat.

Indicator lamp flashes or is illuminated: safety belt on the driver or passenger side is not buckled. The safety belt reminder can also be activated if objects are placed on the front passenger seat.

Make sure that the safety belts are positioned correctly.

Airbag system

Airbag system and belt tensioner are not working.

Have the vehicle checked immediately by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Parking brake

The parking brake is set.

Release the parking brake, refer to page 89.

Approach control warning

Indicator light illuminates: advance warning is issued, for example when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

Increase distance.

Indicator light flashes: acute warning of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another vehicle at a relatively high differential speed.

Intervention by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Person warning

Symbol in the instrument cluster.

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, the symbol lights up and a signal sounds.

Yellow lights

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

Braking force boost may not be working. Avoid abrupt braking. Take the longer braking distance into account.

Have the system immediately checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

The indicator light flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized. Reduce speed and modify your driving style to the driving circumstances.

The indicator light lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 135.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control deactivated

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control, refer to page 135.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

M Dynamic Mode MDM is switched on.

M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 136.

Indicator light also flashes: MDM controls the drive and braking forces. The vehicle is stabilized.

The indicator light illuminates: MDM has malfunctioned. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 136.

Flat Tire Monitor FTM

The Flat Tire Monitor signals a loss of tire inflation pressure in a tire.

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 124.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

The indicator light illuminates.

The Tire Pressure Monitor reports a low tire inflation pressure or a flat tire.

Follow the information in the Check Control message.

The indicator light flashes and then illuminates continuously.

No flat tire or loss of tire inflation pressure can be detected.

- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.
- ▷ TPM was unable to complete the reset. Reset the system again.
- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 120.

Steering system

Steering system in some cases not working.

Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Emissions

- ▷ The warning light lights up:

  Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.
- ▷ The warning light flashes under certain circumstances:

  This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

  Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Socket for Onboard Diagnosis, refer to page 211.

Lane departure warning

System is switched on and under certain circumstances warns if a detected lane is left without flashing beforehand.

Lane departure warning, refer to page 132.

Green lights

Turn signal

Turn signal switched on.

Unusually rapid flashing of the indicator light indicates that a turn signal bulb has failed.

Turn signal, refer to page 89.

Parking lights, headlight

Parking lights or headlights are switched on.

High-beam Assistant

High-beam Assistant is switched on.

High beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the traffic situation.

High-beam Assistant, refer to page 114.

Cruise control

The system is switched on. It maintains the speed that was set using the control elements on the steering wheel.

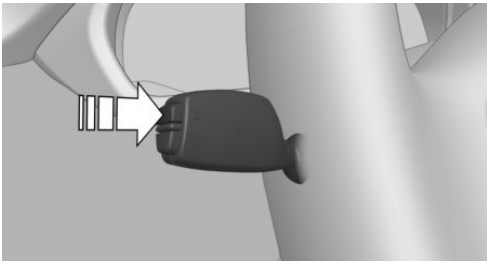
Blue lights

High beams

High beams are switched on.

High beams, refer to page 90.

Hiding Check Control messages



Press and hold button on signal lever.

Continuous display

Some Check Control messages are displayed continuously and are not cleared until the malfunction is eliminated. If several malfunctions occur at once, the messages are displayed consecutively.

These messages can be hidden for approx. 8 seconds. After this time, they are displayed again automatically.

Temporary display

Other Check Control messages are hidden automatically after approx. 20 seconds. These Check Control messages are stored and can be displayed again later.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. ⚠ "Check Control"
4. Select the text message.

Display

Check Control

At least one Check Control message is displayed or is stored.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

SMS text messages

SMS text messages in combination with a symbol in the instrument cluster explain a Check Control message and the meaning of the indicator/warning lights.

Supplementary SMS text messages

Additional information, such as on the cause of an error or the required action, can be called up via Check Control.

With urgent messages the added text will be automatically displayed on the Control Display.

Functions

Depending on the Check Control message, the following functions can be selected.

▷ "Owner's Manual"

Display additional information about the Check Control message in the Integrated Owner's Manual.

▷ "Service request"

Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

▷ "BMW Roadside Assistance"

Contact Roadside Assistance.

Messages after trip completion

Special messages displayed while driving are displayed again after the ignition is switched off.

Fuel gauge

Depending on the equipment version, the arrow beside the fuel pump symbol shows which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is on.

Vehicle tilt position may cause the display to vary.

Information on refueling, refer to page 184.

The yellow indicator light illuminates, once the fuel reserve is reached.

Tachometer

Always avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. In this range, the fuel supply is reduced to protect the engine.

Odometer and trip odometer

Display

▷ Odometer, arrow 1.

▷ Trip odometer, arrow 2.

Show/reset miles

Press the button.

▷ When the ignition is switched off, the time, the external temperature and the odometer are displayed.

▷ When the ignition is switched on, the trip odometer is reset.

External temperature

WARNING

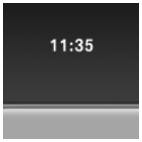
Even at temperatures above +37 °F/+3 °C there can be a risk of icy roads, e.g., on bridges or shady sections of road. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust your driving style to the weather conditions at low temperatures.◀

If the indicator drops to +37 °F/+3 °C or lower, a signal sounds.

A Check Control message is displayed.

There is an increased risk of ice on roads.

Time



The time is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The time can be set on the Control Display.

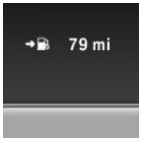
Date

The date is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The date can be set on the Control Display.

Range

Display



With a low remaining range:

- ▷ A Check Control message is displayed briefly.
- ▷ The remaining range is shown on the Onboard Computer.

▷ With a dynamic driving style, for instance taking curves aggressively, the engine function is not always ensured.

The Check Control message appears continuously below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km.

NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

Current fuel consumption

Instrument cluster

Displays the current fuel consumption. Check whether you are currently driving in an efficient and environmentally-friendly manner.

Displaying the current fuel consumption

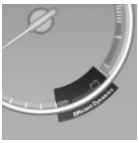
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the current fuel consumption can also be displayed as bar in the instrument cluster.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Additional indicators"

Energy recovery

Display



The kinetic energy of the vehicle is converted to electrical energy while the vehicle is coasting. The vehicle battery is partially charged and fuel consumption can be reduced.

EfficientDynamics display

Displaying Efficient Dynamics

Information on fuel consumption and technology can be displayed while driving.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Displaying fuel consumption history

The average fuel consumption can be displayed within an adjustable time frame.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4. Select the symbol.

Selecting route length

1. OPTION Press button.
2. Select desired route length or scaling.

Resetting fuel consumption history

1. OPTION Press button.
2. "Reset consumption history"

Displaying EfficientDynamics info

The current efficiency can be displayed.

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "EfficientDynamics"
4. Select the symbol.

The following systems are displayed:

▷ Auto Start/Stop function.

▷ Energy recovery.

▷ Climate control output.

Service requirements

Concept

The function displays the service requirements and the corresponding maintenance scopes.

General information

After the ignition is turned on the instrument cluster briefly displays available driving distance or time to the next scheduled maintenance.

A service advisor can read out the current service requirements from your remote control.

Display

Detailed information on service requirements

More information on the scope of service required can be displayed on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"

   Required maintenance procedures and legally mandated inspections are displayed.
4. Select an entry to call up detailed information.

Symbols

Symbols	Description
OK	No service is currently required.
▲	The deadline for scheduled maintenance or a legally mandated inspection is approaching.
▲	The service deadline has already passed.

Entering appointment dates

Enter the dates for the mandatory vehicle inspections.

Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.

Via iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Service required"
4. "Vehicle inspection"
5. "Date:"
6. Select the desired setting.
7. Confirm.
   The entered date is stored.

Automatic Service Request

Data regarding the service status or legally mandated vehicle inspections is automatically transmitted to your dealer's service center before a service due date.

You can check when your dealer's service center was notified.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Teleservice Call"

Gear shift indicator

Concept

The system recommends the most fuel efficient gear for the current driving situation.

General information

The gear shift indicator is active in the sequential mode of the M double clutch transmission and for the manual transmission.

Suggestions to shift gear up or down are displayed in the instrument cluster.

On vehicles without a gear shift indicator, the engaged gear is displayed.

Manual transmission: displaying

Symbol	Description
	Fuel efficient gear is set.
▲3	Shift up to fuel efficient gear.
▼3	Shift down to fuel efficient gear.
▶N	Shift into neutral.

M double-clutch transmission: displaying

Example	Description
M3	Fuel efficient gear is set.
3▶4	Shift into fuel efficient gear.

Speed Limit Info

Speed Limit Info

Concept

Speed Limit Info shows the current maximum permitted speed in the instrument cluster.

General information

The camera in the area of the interior mirror detects traffic signs at the edge of the road as well as variable overhead sign posts. Traffic signs with extra symbols for wet road conditions, etc., are also detected and compared with the vehicle's onboard data, such as from the rain sensor, and will be displayed depending on the situation. The system takes into ac-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

count the information stored in the navigation system and also displays speed limits present on routes without signs.

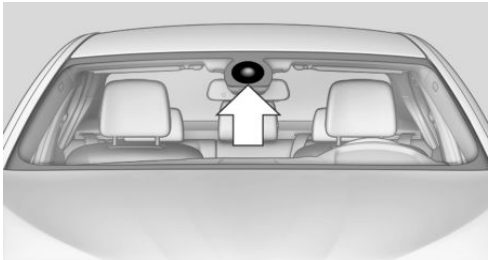
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

Overview

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, Speed Limit Info is active every time the vehicle drives off and is displayed on the instrument cluster automatically. Otherwise, Speed Limit Info is available via the Onboard Computer and can be switched on separately.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. "Speed limit information"

If Speed Limit Info is switched on, it can be displayed on the Info Display in the instrument cluster via the Onboard Computer.

Display

The following is displayed in the instrument cluster:

Speed Limit Info

Current speed limit.

Speed Limit Info not available.

System limits

The system may not be fully functional and may provide incorrect information in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ When signs are fully or partially concealed by objects, stickers or paint.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights or strong reflections.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered by a sticker, etc.
- ▷ In the event of incorrect detection by the camera.
- ▷ If the speed limits stored in the navigation system are incorrect.
- ▷ In areas not covered by the navigation system.
- ▷ When roads differ from the navigation, such as due to changes in road routing.

- When passing buses or trucks with a speed sticker.
- If the traffic signs are non-conforming.
- During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- When signs that are valid for a parallel road are detected.

Selection lists

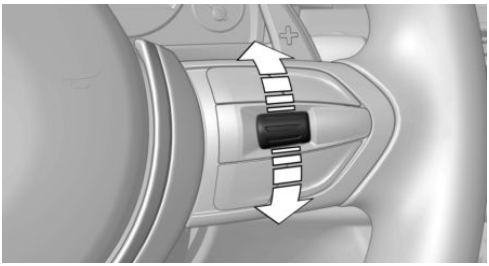
General information

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following can be displayed or operated using the buttons and the thumbwheel on the steering wheel and the display in the instrument cluster:

- Current audio source.
- Redial phone feature.
- Turn on voice activation system.

It also displays programs of the Driving Dynamics Control.

Activating a list and adjusting the setting



On the right side of the steering wheel, turn the thumbwheel to activate the corresponding list.

1. Turn the thumbwheel and select the desired setting.
2. Press the thumbwheel.

Display

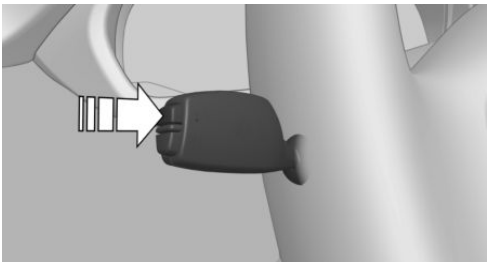
Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

Onboard Computer

Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data in the instrument cluster, such as average values.

Calling up information on the Info Display



Press and hold button on signal lever.

Information is displayed in the Info Display of the instrument cluster. Pressing the button repeatedly displays additional information.

Information at a glance

Repeatedly pressing the button on the turn signal lever calls up the following information in the Info Display:

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ Range.
- ▷ Average consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Current consumption, fuel.
- ▷ Average speed.
- ▷ Date.
- ▷ Engine temperature display.
- ▷ Speed Limit Info.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the time of arrival.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.
- ▷ Depending on the equipment, the distance to destination.

  When destination guidance is activated in the navigation system.

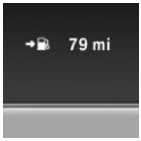
Selecting information

You can select what information from the On-board Computer is to be displayed on the Info Display of the instrument cluster.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Displays"
4. "Instrument panel"
5. Select the desired information.

Indication in the Info Display



The information from the On-board Computer is shown in the Info Display in the instrument cluster.

Information in detail

Range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel.

The range is calculated based on your driving style over the last 20 miles/30 km.

Average fuel consumption

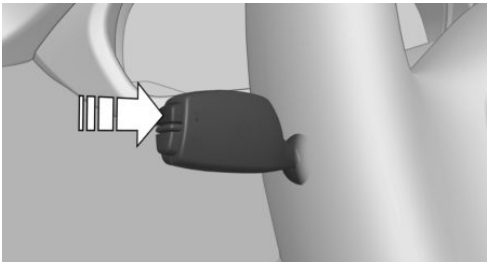
The average fuel consumption is calculated for the period while the engine is running.

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the distance traveled since the last reset by the Onboard Computer.

Average speed

Periods in which the vehicle is parked with the engine manually stopped are not included in the calculation of the average speed.

Resetting average values



Press and hold button on turn signal lever.

Engine temperature display

Displays the current engine temperature, based on a combination of coolant and engine oil temperature. As soon as the optimum operating temperature has been attained, the indicator is in the center position.

If the engine oil or coolant, and thus the engine, become too hot, a Check Control message is displayed too.

Check the coolant level, refer to page 208.

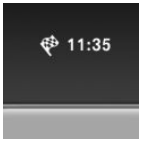
Distance to destination

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the distance remaining to the destination is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The distance to the destination is adopted automatically.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Time of arrival



Depending on the vehicle equipment, the estimated time of arrival is displayed if a destination is entered in the navigation system before the trip is started.

The time must be correctly set.

Speed Limit Info

Further information, see chapter Speed Limit Info.

Onboard Computer on the Control Display

Concept

The Onboard Computer displays different vehicle data on the Control Display, such as average values.

General information

Two types of Onboard Computers are available on the Control Display:

- ▷ "Onboard info": average values, such as the fuel consumption, are displayed. The values can be reset individually.
- ▷ "Trip computer": the values deliver an overview of a certain distance and can be reset as often as necessary.

Calling up the Onboard Computer or trip computer

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info" or "Trip computer"

Resetting the Onboard Computer

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Onboard info"
4. "Consumption" or "Speed"
5. "OK"

Resetting the trip computer

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Driving information"
3. "Trip computer"
4. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.
   - ▷ "Reset": all values are reset.
   - ▷ "Automatic reset": all values are reset approx. 4 hours after the vehicle has come to a standstill.

Sport displays

General information

On the Control Display, the current values for performance and torque can be displayed if the vehicle is appropriately equipped.

Displaying sport displays

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Technology in action"
3. "Sport displays"

Speed warning

Concept

A speed limit can be set that when reached will cause a warning to be issued.

General information

The warning is repeated if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit again, after it has dropped below it by 3 mph/5 km/h.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Displaying, setting or changing the speed warning

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Warning at:"
5. Turn the Controller until the desired speed is displayed.
6. Press the Controller.

Activating/deactivating the speed warning

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Speed warning"
5. Press the Controller.

Setting your current speed as the speed warning

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Speed warning"
4. "Select current speed"
5. Press the Controller.

Vehicle status

General information

The status can be displayed and actions performed for several systems.

Opening the vehicle status

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"

Information at a glance

- ▷ "Flat Tire Monitor": Status of the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 124.
- ▷ "Tire Pressure Monitor": Status of the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 121.
- ▷ Resetting the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 121.
- ▷ "Engine oil level": Electronic engine oil level check, refer to page 204.
- ▷ "Check Control": Check Control messages are stored in the background and can be displayed on the Control Display. Displaying stored Check Control messages, refer to page 102.
- ▷ "Service required": Displaying service requirements, refer to page 105.
- ▷ "Teleservice Call": service request.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Lights

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Overview

Switches in the vehicle

The light switch element is located next to the steering wheel.

Symbol	Function
	Automatic headlight control. Adaptive light functions.
0	Lights off. Daytime running lights.
	Parking lights.
	Low beams.
	Instrument lighting.

Parking lights, cornering lights and roadside parking lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ,

If the driver's door is opened when the ignition is switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off.

Parking lights

Position of switch:

The vehicle is illuminated on all sides.

Do not use the parking lights for extended periods; otherwise, they might drain the battery and it would then be impossible to start the engine.

Canada: when parking, switch on the one-sided roadside parking light, refer to page 112.

Low beams

Position of switch:

The low beams light up when the ignition is switched on.

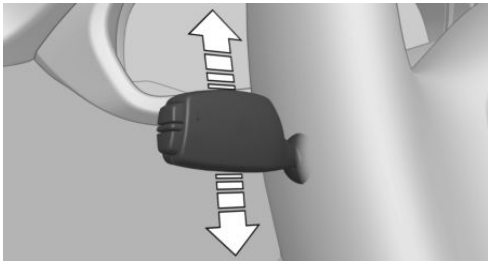
Canada: roadside parking light

Concept

The vehicle can be illuminated on one side.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Switching on



With radio-ready state switched off, press the lever either up or down past the resistance point.

Switching off

Press the lever back into the standard position.

Welcome lamps and headlamp courtesy delay feature

Welcome lamps

General information

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the ambient brightness, individual light functions may be switched on briefly when the vehicle is unlocked.

Activating/deactivating

Position of switch: ,

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Welcome lights"

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Headlight courtesy delay feature

General information

The low beams stay illuminated for a particular time if the high beams are switched on after radio-ready state is switched off.

Setting the duration

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. "Pathway lighting"
6. Set length of time.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Automatic headlight control

Concept

The low beams are switched on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness, for instance in tunnels, in twilight or if there is precipitation.

General information

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

When emerging from a tunnel during the day, the low beams are not switched off immediately but instead only after approx. 2 minutes.

Activating

Position of switch:

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

System limits

The automatic headlight control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment of lighting conditions.

For example, the sensors are unable to detect fog or hazy weather. To avoid safety risks under these conditions, you should always switch on the lights manually.

Daytime running lights

General information

Position of switch: 0 , ≡D ◐≡ , ≡◐

The daytime running lights light up when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched off, the parking lights light up in position ≡D ◐≡ .

Activating/deactivating

In some countries, daytime running lights are mandatory, so it may not be possible to deactivate the daytime running lights.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Exterior lighting"
5. Select the desired setting.

Settings are stored for the profile currently used.

Adaptive Light Control

Concept

Adaptive Light Control is a variable headlamp control system that enables dynamic illumination of the road surface.

General information

Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlight follows the course of the road.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Light Control does not swivel to the driver's side when the vehicle is at a standstill.

Activating

Position of switch: ≡◐

Adaptive Headlight Control is active when the engine is running.

Adaptive headlight range control

The adaptive headlight range control compensates for acceleration and braking operations in order not to blind the oncoming traffic and to achieve optimum illumination of the roadway.

High-beam Assistant

Concept

The high-beam Assistant detects other traffic participants early on and automatically switches the high beams on or off depending on the traffic situation.

General information

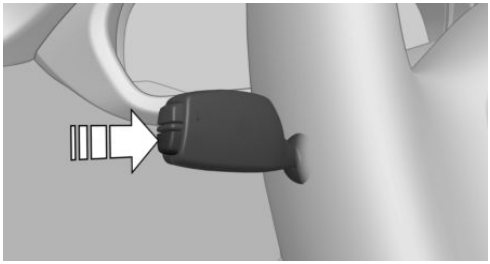
The high-beam Assistant ensures that the high beams are switched on, whenever the traffic situation allows. In the low speed range, the high beams are not switched on by the system.

The system responds to light from oncoming traffic and traffic driving ahead of you, and to adequate illumination, for instance in towns and cities.

The high beams can be switched on and off at any time as usual.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Activating/deactivating



Position of switch, depending on the vehicle equipment: ,

Press and hold button on signal lever.

The indicator light in the instrument cluster is illuminated when the low beams are switched on.

The headlights are automatically switched between low beams and high beams.

The blue indicator light in the instrument cluster lights up when the system switches on the high beams.

The high-beam Assistant is deactivated when manually switching the high beams on and off, refer to page 90.

To reactivate the high-beam Assistant, press the button on the turn signal lever.

System limits

The high-beam Assistant cannot serve as a substitute for the driver's personal judgment of when to use the high beams. In situation that require this, therefore switch off manually.

The system is not fully functional in the following situations, and driver intervention may be necessary:

- In very unfavorable weather conditions, such as fog or heavy precipitation.
- When detecting poorly-lit road users such as pedestrians, cyclists, horseback riders and wagons; when driving close to train or ship traffic; and at animal crossings.
- In tight curves, on hilltops or in depressions, in cross traffic or half-obscured oncoming traffic on highways.
- In poorly-lit towns and cities and in the presence of highly reflective signs.
- When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.

Instrument lighting

Functional requirement

The parking lights or low beams must be switched on to adjust the brightness.

Settings

Adjust the brightness with the thumbwheel.

Interior lights

General information

Depending on the equipment, the interior lights, footwell lights, entry lamps, and courtesy lamps are controlled automatically.

Thumb wheel for the instrument lighting controls brightness of some of these features.

Overview

1 Interior lights

2 Reading lights

Switching the interior lights on/off

Press button.

To switch off permanently: press the button and hold for approx. 3 seconds.

Switching the reading lights on/off

Press button.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the reading lights are located next to the interior lights in the front and rear.

Ambient light

General information

Depending on the equipment version, lighting can be adjusted for some lights in the car's interior.

Selecting color scheme

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Ambient lighting"
6. Select the desired setting.

Setting the brightness

Depending on the equipment, the brightness of the ambient light can be adjusted via the thumbwheel for the instrument lighting or on the Control Display.

Using iDrive:

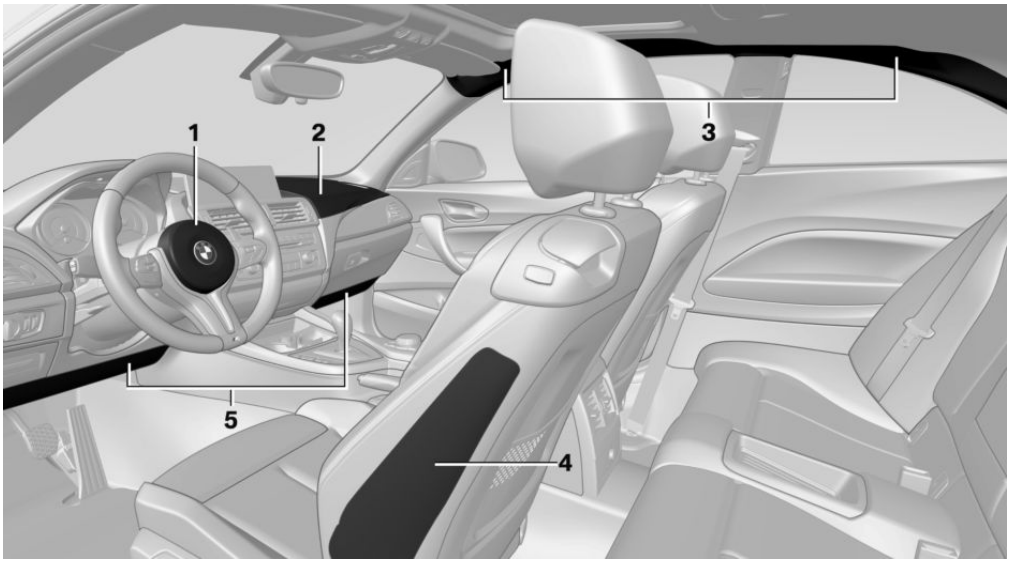
1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Lighting"
4. "Interior lighting"
5. "Brightness"
6. Adjust the brightness.

Safety

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Airbags



1 Front airbag, driver
2 Front airbag, front passenger
3 Head airbag
4 Side airbag
5 Knee airbag

Front airbags

Front airbags help protect the driver and the front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone would not provide adequate protection.

Side airbag

In a lateral impact, the side airbag supports the side of the body in the chest and lap area.

Head airbag

In a lateral impact, the head airbag supports the head.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Ejection Mitigation

The head airbag system is designed as an ejection mitigation countermeasure to reduce the likelihood of ejections of vehicle occupants through side windows during rollovers or side impact events.

Knee airbag

The knee airbag supports the legs in a frontal impact.

Protective action

Airbags are not triggered in every impact situation, e.g., in less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Information on optimum effect of the airbags

WARNING

If the seat position is incorrect or the deployment area of the airbags is impaired, the airbag system cannot provide protection as intended and may cause additional injuries due to triggering. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Follow the information on achieving the optimum protective effect of the airbag system.◀

- ▷ Keep a distance from the airbags.
- ▷ Always grasp the steering wheel on the steering wheel rim. Hold your hands at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions, to keep the risk of injury to your hands or arms as low as possible when the airbag is triggered.
- ▷ Make sure that occupants keep their heads away from the side airbag.
- ▷ Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly, i.e., keeps his or her feet and legs in the floor area and does not support them on the dashboard.
- ▷ There should be no additional persons, animals or objects between an airbag and a person.
- ▷ Dashboard and windshield on the front passenger side must stay clear - do not attach adhesive labels or coverings and do not attach brackets or cables, for instance for GPS devices or mobile phones.
- ▷ Do not apply adhesive materials to the airbag cover panels, do not cover them or modify them in any way.
- ▷ Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area.
- ▷ Do not place slip covers, seat cushions or other objects on the front passenger seat that are not specifically suited for seats with integrated side airbags.
- ▷ Do not hang pieces of clothing, such as jackets, over the backrests.
- ▷ Never modify either the individual components or the wiring in the airbag system. This also applies to steering wheel covers, the dashboard, and the seats.
- ▷ Do not remove the airbag system.

Even when you follow all instructions very closely, injury from contact with the airbags cannot be fully ruled out in certain situations.

The ignition and inflation noise may lead to short-term and, in most cases, temporary hearing impairment in sensitive occupants.

Vehicle modifications for a person with disabilities may affect the air bag system; contact BMW Customer Relations for further information.

Warnings and information on the airbags are also found on the sun visors.

Functional readiness of the airbag system

Safety information

WARNING

Individual components can be hot after triggering of the airbag system. There is a risk of injury. Do not touch individual components.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

WARNING

Improperly executed work can lead to failure, malfunction or unintentional triggering of the airbag system. In the case of a malfunction, the airbag system might not trigger as intended despite the accident severity. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Have the airbag system checked, repaired, dismantled and scrapped by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Correct function

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up briefly and thereby indicates the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the belt tensioner.

Airbag system malfunctioning

- ▷ Warning lamp does not come on when the ignition is turned on.
- ▷ The warning lamp lights up continuously.

Automatic deactivation of the front-seat passenger airbags

Concept

The system reads if the front passenger seat is occupied by measuring the human body's resistance.

Front, knee and side airbag on the front passenger's side are either activated or deactivated.

General information

Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, refer to the safety notes and instructions for children on the front passenger seat, see Children.

Safety information

WARNING

To ensure the front-seat passenger airbag function, the system must be able to detect whether a person is sitting in the front passenger seat. The entire seat cushion area must be used for this purpose. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the front passenger keeps his or her feet in the floor area.◀

Malfunction of the automatic deactivation system

When transporting older children and adults, the front-seat passenger airbags may be deactivated in certain sitting positions. In this case, the indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up.

In this case, change the sitting position so that the front-seat passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out.

If it is not possible to activate the airbags, have the person sit in the rear.

To enable correct recognition of the occupied seat cushion

- ▷ Do not attach covers, cushions, ball mats or other items to the front passenger seat unless they are specifically determined to be safe for use on the front passenger seat.
- ▷ Do not place any electronic devices on the passenger seat if a child restraint system is to be installed on it.
- ▷ Do not place objects under the seat that could press against the seat from below.
- ▷ No moisture in or on the seat.

Indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags

The indicator lamp for the front-seat passenger airbags indicates the operating state of the front-seat passenger airbags.

The lamp indicates whether the airbags are either activated or deactivated.

- ▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child is properly seated in a child restraint fixing system or when the seat is empty. The airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.
- ▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, e.g., a correctly seated person of sufficient size is detected on the seat. The airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

Detected child restraint systems

The system generally detects children seated in a child restraint system, particularly in child restraint systems required by NHTSA at the point in time when the vehicle was manufactured. After installing a child restraint system, make sure that the indicator light for the front-seat passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child restraint system has been detected and the front-seat passenger airbags are not activated.

Strength of the driver's and front-seat passenger airbag

The explosive power that activates driver's/front-seat passenger airbags very much depends on the positions of the driver's/front passenger seat.

To maintain the accuracy of this function over the long term, calibrate the front seats as soon as a respective message appears on the Control Display.

Calibrating the front seats

WARNING

There is a risk of jamming when moving the seats. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the seat is clear prior to any adjustment.◀

A corresponding message appears on the Control Display.

1. Press the switch and move the respective seat all the way forward, until it stops.
2. Press the switch forward again. The seat still moves forward slightly.
3. Readjust the seat to the desired position.

The calibration procedure is completed when the message on the Control Display disappears.

If the message continues to be displayed, repeat the calibration.

If the message does not disappear after a repeat calibration, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitor TPM

Concept

The system monitors tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system warns you if there is a significant loss of pressure in one or more tires.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

General information

Sensors in the tire valves measure the tire inflation pressure and, depending on the model, the tire temperature.

With use of the system follow further information found under Tire inflation pressure, refer to page 188.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, a reset was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, a reset was performed.
- ▷ Wheels with TPM wheel electronics.

Status display

Current status

The system status can be displayed on the Control Display, e.g., whether or not the system is active.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Tire Pressure Monitor"

The current status is displayed.

Tire conditions

General information

Tire and system status are indicated by the color of the wheels and a SMS text message on the Control Display.

All wheels green

System is active and will issue a warning related to the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

One to four yellow wheels

A flat tire or major drop in the tire inflation pressure has occurred in the indicated tires.

Gray wheels

It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Possible causes:

- ▷ Malfunction.
- ▷ The system is being reset.

Additonal information

The status control display additionally shows the current tire inflation pressures and, depending on the model, tire temperatures. It shows the actual values read; they may vary depending on driving style or weather conditions.

Resetting the system

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) RESET "Tire Pressure Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Reset tire inflation pressure: "Perform reset".
6. Drive away.

The wheels are displayed in gray and the following is displayed "Resetting Tire Pressure Monitor…".

After driving faster than 19 mph/30 km/h for a short period, the set tire inflation pressures are accepted as reference values. The reset is completed automatically while driving.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

After a successfully completed reset, the wheels on the Control Display are shown in green and "Tire Pressure Monitor active. See label for recommended pressures." is displayed.

You may interrupt this trip at any time. When you continue the reset resumes automatically.

Messages

General information

A low tire inflation pressure may cause the DSC Dynamic Stability Control to be switched on.

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.◀

If a tire inflation pressure check is required

Message

A symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	The system has detected a wheel change, but no reset was done. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset. Inflation was not carried out according to specifications.
	The tire inflation pressure has fallen below the level of the last reset.

Measure

1. Check the tire pressure and correct as needed.
2. Reset the system.

If the tire inflation pressure is too low

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a tire inflation pressure loss. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and drive moderately. Do not exceed a speed of 80 mph/130 km/h.
2. At the next opportunity, for instance gas station, check and correct the tire inflation pressure in all four tires, if necessary.
3. Reset the system.

If there is a significant loss of tire inflation pressure

Message

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with the affected tire appears in a Check Control message on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure. No reset was performed for the system. The system issues a warning based on the tire inflation pressures stored during the last reset.

Measure

Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.

Actions in the event of a flat tire

1. Identify the damaged tire.

   To do this, check the air pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit.

   If the tire inflation pressure in all four tires is correct, the Tire Pressure Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.

   If identification of flat tire damage is not possible, please contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
2. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

Use of sealant, for instance from the flat tire kit, may damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the electronics checked and replaced at the next opportunity.

System limits

Temperature

The tire inflation pressure depends on the tire's temperature.

Driving or exposure to the sun will increase the tire's temperature, thus increasing the tire inflation pressure.

The tire inflation pressure is reduced when the tire temperature falls again.

These circumstances may cause a warning when temperatures fall very sharply.

Sudden tire pressure loss

The system cannot indicate sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances.

Failure to perform a reset

The system does not function properly if a reset has not been carried out, for instance a flat tire is reported though tire inflation pressures are correct.

Malfunction

The yellow warning light flashes and is then illuminated continuously. A Check Control message is displayed. It may not be possible to identify tire pressure losses.

Examples and recommendations in the following situations:

- ▷ A wheel without TPM wheel electronics is mounted: have it checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop as needed.
- ▷ Malfunction: have system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ The system was unable to complete the reset. Perform a system reset again.
- ▷ Interference caused by systems or devices with the same radio frequency: after leaving the area of the interference, the system automatically becomes active again.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Each tire, including the spare (if provided) should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.) As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale. Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor

Concept

The system detects tire inflation pressure loss on the basis of rotation speed differences between the individual wheels while driving.

In the event of a tire inflation pressure loss, the diameter and therefore the rotational speed of the corresponding wheel changes. The difference will be detected and reported as a flat tire.

The system does not measure the actual inflation pressure in the tires.

Functional requirements

The following conditions must be met for the system; otherwise, reliable flagging of a loss of tire inflation pressure is not assured:

- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement, an initialization was performed with the correct tire inflation pressure.
- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure was adjusted to a new value, an initialization was performed.

Status display

The current status of the flat tire monitor can be displayed, for example, whether the RPA is active.

About iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) "Flat Tire Monitor"

The status is displayed.

Initialization required

An initialization must be performed in the following situations:

- ▷ After the tire inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- ▷ After a tire or wheel replacement.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Performing initialization

When initializing, the set tire inflation pressures serve as reference values in order to detect a flat tire. Initialization is started by confirming the tire inflation pressures.

Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. (!) RESET "Flat Tire Monitor"
4. Start the engine but do not drive off.
5. Start the initialization with: "Perform reset"
6. Drive away.

The initialization is completed while driving, which can be interrupted at any time.

The initialization automatically continues when driving resumes.

Messages

Safety information

WARNING

A damaged regular tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. Repair the flat tire or replace the wheel.◀

Indication of a flat tire

A yellow warning light is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

In addition, a symbol with a Check Control message appears on the Control Display.

Symbol	Possible cause
	There is a flat tire or a major loss in tire inflation pressure.

Measure

1. Reduce your speed and stop cautiously. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify the damaged wheel. To do this, check the air pressure in all four tires, for instance using the tire pressure gage of a flat tire kit. If the tire inflation pressure in all tires is correct, the Flat Tire Monitor may not have been initialized. In this case, initialize the system.
3. Repair the flat tire, e.g., with a flat tire kit or by changing the wheel.

System limits

The system could be delayed or malfunction in the following situations:

- ▷ A natural, even tire inflation pressure loss in all four tires will not be recognized. Therefore, check the tire inflation pressure regularly.
- ▷ Sudden serious tire damage caused by external circumstances cannot be recognized in advance.
- ▷ When the system has not been initialized.
- ▷ When driving on a snowy or slippery road surface.
- ▷ Sporty driving style: spinning traction wheels, high lateral acceleration (drifting).
- ▷ When driving with snow chains.

Intelligent Safety

Concept

Intelligent Safety enables central operation of the driver assistance system.

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, Intelligent Safety consists of one or more systems that can help prevent an imminent collision. These systems are active automatically every time the engine is started using the Start/Stop button:

- ▷ Approach control warning with City light braking function, refer to page 126.
- ▷ Pedestrian warning, refer to page 129.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

WARNING

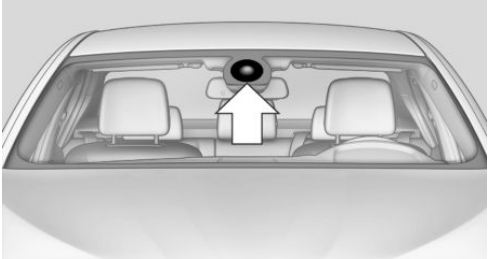
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◂

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

The Intelligent Safety systems are automatically active after every departure.

Press button: the systems are turned off. The LED goes out.

Press button: the systems are turned on. The LED lights up.

Settings can be made on the Control Display.

Front-end collision warning with City Braking function

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents. If an accident cannot be prevented, the system will help reduce the collision speed.

The system sounds a warning before an imminent collision and actuates brakes independently, if needed.

The automatic braking intervention is done with limited force and duration.

A camera in the area of the rearview mirror controls the system.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

The approach control warning is available even if cruise control has been deactivated.

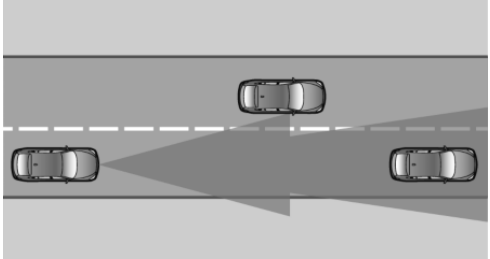
With the vehicle approaching another vehicle intentionally, the approach control warning and braking are delayed in order to avoid false system reactions.

General information

The system warns at two levels of an imminent danger of collision at speeds from approx. 3 mph/5 km/h. Time of warnings may vary with the current driving situation.

Appropriate braking kicks in at speeds of up to 35 mph/60 km/h.

Detection range



Objects that the system can detect are taken into account.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

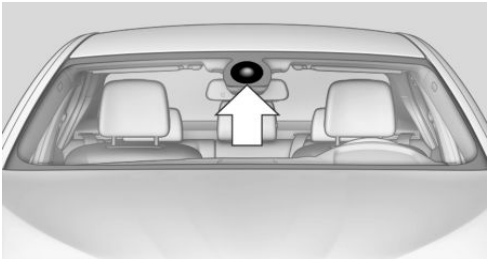
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching off

Press button: the system is switched off. The LED goes out.

Re-press button: the system is switched on. The LED lights up.

Setting the warning time

The warning time can be set.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. "Intelligent Safety"
4. "Warning time"
5. Select the desired setting.

The selected time is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a vehicle detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster.

Symbol	Measure
	Symbol lights up red: prewarning. Brake and increase distance.
	Symbol flashes red and an acoustic signal sounds: acute warning. Brake and make an evasive maneuver, if necessary.

Prewarning

This warning is issued, e.g., when there is the impending danger of a collision or the distance to the vehicle ahead is too small.

The driver must intervene actively when there is a prewarning.

Acute warning with braking function

Acute warning is displayed in case of the imminent danger of a collision when the vehicle approaches another object at a high differential speed.

The driver must intervene actively when there is an acute warning. If necessary, the driver is assisted by a minor automatic braking intervention in a possible risk of collision.

Acute warnings can also be triggered without previous forewarning.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Detection range

The system's detection potential is limited.

Thus, a system reaction might not come or might come late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Slow moving vehicles when you approach them at high speed.
- ▷ Vehicles that suddenly swerve in front of you, or sharply decelerating vehicles.
- ▷ Vehicles with an unusual rear appearance.
- ▷ Two-wheeled vehicles ahead of you.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are limited or deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera in the mirror is dirty or obscured.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.

Warning sensitivity

The more sensitive the warning settings are, for example the warning time, the more warnings are displayed. Therefore, there may also be an excess of premature or unjustified warnings and reactions.

Person warning with City light braking function

Concept

The system can help prevent accidents with pedestrians.

When driving at city speeds, the system will issue a warning if there is imminent risk of a collision with pedestrians, and support this with a light braking function.

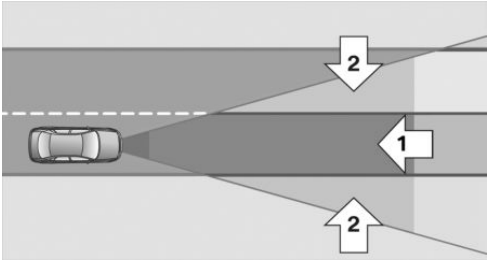
The camera in the area of the interior mirror controls the system.

General information

With sufficient brightness, the system warns about possible collision danger with pedestrians starting at approx. 6 mph/10 km/h to approx. 35 mph/60 km/h and assists with braking before a collision.

The system reacts to people who are within the detection range of the system.

Detection range



The detection area in front of the vehicle is divided into two areas:

- ▷ Central area, arrow 1, directly in front of the vehicle.
- ▷ Expanded area, arrow 2, to the right and left of the central area.

A collision is imminent if pedestrians are located within the central area. A warning is issued about pedestrians who are located within the extended area only if they are moving in the direction of the central area.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess visibility and traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

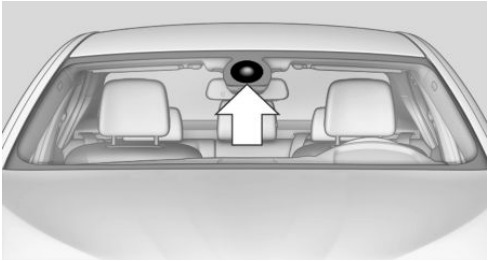
Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Intelligent Safety button

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is automatically active after every driving off.

Switching off

Press button: the systems are switched off. The LED goes out.

Press button: the systems are switched on. The LED lights up.

Warning with braking function

Display

If a collision with a person detected in this way is imminent, a warning symbol appears on the instrument cluster.

The red symbol is displayed and a signal sounds.

Intervene immediately by braking or make an evasive maneuver.

Braking intervention

The warning prompts the driver himself/herself to react. During a warning, the maximum braking force is used. Prerequisite for the brake booster is sufficiently quick and hard stepping on the brake pedal. The system can assist with some braking intervention if there is a risk of a collision. At low speeds vehicles may thus come to a complete stop.

Manual transmission: during a braking intervention up to a complete stop, the engine may be shut down.

The braking intervention is executed only if vehicle stability has not been restricted, for instance by deactivating the DSC Dynamic Stability Control.

The braking intervention can be interrupted by stepping on the accelerator pedal or by actively moving the steering wheel.

Object detection can be restricted. Follow the limitations of the detection range and functional restrictions.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Detection range

The detection potential of the camera is limited.

Thus, a warning might not be issued or be issued late.

E.g., the following situations may not be detected:

- ▷ Partially covered pedestrians.
- ▷ Pedestrians that are not detected as such because of the viewing angle or contour.
- ▷ Pedestrians outside of the detection range.
- ▷ Pedestrians having a body size less than 32 in/80 cm.

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional or may not be available in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In tight curves.
- ▷ If the driving stability control systems are deactivated, for instance DSC OFF.
- ▷ If the field of view of the camera or the windshield are dirty or covered.
- ▷ Up to 10 seconds after the start of the engine via the Start/Stop button.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.
- ▷ If there are constant blinding effects because of oncoming light, for instance from the sun low in the sky.
- ▷ When it is dark outside.

Lane departure warning

Concept

The lane departure warning alerts when the vehicle on roads with lane markings is about to leave the lane.

General information

Depending on the country version, the system issues a warning at speeds between 35 mph/55 km/h and 45 mph/70 km/h.

When switching on the system below this speed, a message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Warnings are issued by means of a steering wheel vibration. The time of the warning may vary depending on the current driving situation.

The system does not provide a warning if the turn signal is set before leaving the lane.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess road and traffic safety. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.◂

WARNING

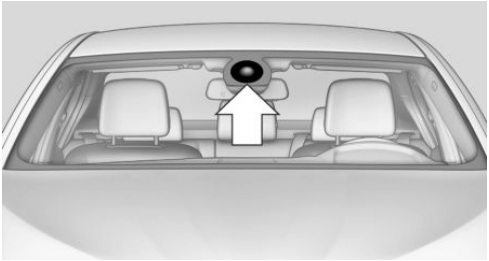
Indicators and warnings do not relieve from personal responsibility. Due to system limits, warnings or reactions of the system may not be output or they may be output too late, incorrectly, or without justification. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

Overview

Button in the vehicle

Lane departure warning

Camera



The camera is installed near the interior mirror.

Keep the windshield in front of the interior mirror clean and clear.

Switching on/off

Press button.

- ▷ On: the LED lights up.
- ▷ Off: the LED goes out.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Display in the instrument cluster

- ▷ Lines: system is activated.
- ▷ Arrows: at least one lane marking was detected and warnings can be issued.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Issued warning

If you leave the lane

If you leave the lane and if a lane marking has been detected, the steering wheel vibrates.

If the turn signal is set before changing the lane, a warning is not issued.

End of warning

The warning is canceled in the following situations:

- ▷ Automatically after approx. 3 seconds.
- ▷ When returning to your own lane.
- ▷ When braking hard.
- ▷ When using the turn signal.

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Functional limitations

The system may not be fully functional in the following situations:

- ▷ In heavy fog, wet conditions, or snowfall.
- ▷ In the event of missing, worn, poorly visible, merging, diverging, or multiple lane markings such as in construction areas.
- ▷ When lane markings are covered in snow, ice, dirt or water.
- ▷ In tight curves or on narrow lanes.
- ▷ When the lane markings are covered by objects.
- ▷ When driving very close to the vehicle in front of you.
- ▷ When driving toward bright lights.
- ▷ When the windshield in front of the interior mirror is fogged over, dirty or covered with stickers, etc.
- ▷ During calibration of the camera immediately after vehicle delivery.

Brake force display

Concept

Additional brake lamps indicate emergency braking to the traffic behind. This can reduce the risk of a rear-end collision.

General information

- ▷ During normal brake application, the outer brake lights light up.
- ▷ During heavy brake application, the inner brake lights additionally light up.

Attentiveness assistant

Concept

The system can detect decreasing alertness or fatigue of the driver during long, monotonous trips, e.g., on highways. In this situation, it is recommended that the driver takes a break.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess one's physical state. An increasing lack of alertness or fatigue may not be detected or not be detected in time. There is a risk of an accident. Make sure that the driver is rested and alert. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions.◀

Function

The system is activated each time the engine is started and cannot be switched off.

After travel has begun, the system monitors certain aspects of the driver's behavior, so that decreasing alertness or fatigue can be detected.

This procedure takes the following criteria into account:

- ▷ Personal driving style, e.g., steering behavior.
- ▷ Driving conditions, e.g., length of trip.

Starting at approximately 43 mph/70 km/h, the system is active and can display a recommendation to take a break.

Break recommendation

If the driver becomes less alert or fatigued, a message is displayed in the Control Display with the recommendation to take a break.

A recommendation to take a break is displayed only once during an uninterrupted trip.

After a break, another recommendation to take a break cannot be displayed until after approximately 45 minutes.

System limits

The function may be limited in the following situations, e.g., and will either output an incorrect warning or no warning at all:

- ▷ When the clock is set incorrectly.
- ▷ When the vehicle speed is mainly below about 43 mph/70 km/h.
- ▷ With a sporty driving style, such as during rapid acceleration or when cornering fast.
- ▷ In active driving situations, such as when changing lanes frequently.
- ▷ When the road surface is poor.
- ▷ In the event of strong side winds.

The system is reset approx. 45 minutes after parking the vehicle, e.g., in the case of a break during longer trips on highways.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Driving stability control systems

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Anti-lock Braking System ABS

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking.

The vehicle maintains its steering power even during full brake applications, thus increasing active safety.

ABS is operational every time you start the engine.

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the greatest possible braking force boost. It reduces the braking distance to a minimum during emergency stop. This system utilizes all of the benefits provided by the Antilock Brake System ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the emergency stop.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

Concept

Within the physical limits, the system helps to keep the vehicle on a steady course by reducing engine speed and by applying brakes to the individual wheels.

General information

DSC detects the following unstable driving conditions, for instance:

- ▷ Fishtailing, which can lead to oversteering.
- ▷ Loss of traction of the front wheels, which can lead to understeering.

Safety information

WARNING

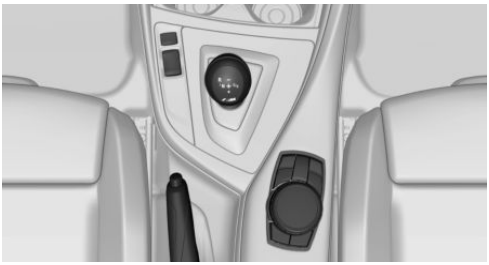
The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g., with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

Overview

Button in the vehicle



DSC OFF button

Indicator/warning lights

The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive and braking forces.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC has malfunctioned.

Deactivating DSC: DSC OFF

General information

When DSC is deactivated, driving stability is reduced during acceleration and when driving in curves.

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Deactivating DSC

Press and hold this button but not longer than approx. 10 seconds, until the indicator light for DSC OFF lights up in the instrument cluster and displays DSC OFF.

DSC is switched off.

Engine tuning switches to a sportier setting.

Activating DSC

Press button.

DSC OFF and the DSC OFF indicator lamp go out.

Indicator/warning lights

When DSC is deactivated, DSC OFF is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The indicator lamp lights up: DSC is deactivated.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

Concept

M Dynamic Mode makes it possible to drive on a dry roadway with high longitudinal and transverse acceleration but with limited driving stability.

Only in the absolute limit area does the system intervene for stabilization by reducing the engine power and by braking interventions on the wheels. In this driving condition, additional steering corrections may be necessary.

You may find it useful to briefly activate MDM under the following special circumstances:

- When driving in slush or on uncleared, snow-covered roads.
- When freeing vehicle from deep snow or driving off from loose ground.
- When driving with snow chains.

Safety information

WARNING

When M Dynamic Mode is activated, stabilizing interventions are carried out only to a reduced extent. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Adapt to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate. Do not jerk the steering wheel in response to a warning.◀

To increase vehicle stability, activate DSC again as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Activating MDM

Press button briefly.

The DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Deactivating MDM

Press button.

DSC OFF indicator light and TRACTION indicator are no longer illuminated.

Indicator/warning lights

Symbol	Description
	Indicator light is illuminated and TRACTION is displayed in the instrument cluster: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
	DSC indicator light also flashes: M Dynamic Mode controls the drive forces and braking forces.
	Indicator lights light up: M Dynamic Mode or DSC has failed.

Active M differential

The concept

The active M differential assures continuously variable locking of the rear axle differential depending on the driving situation. This prevents individual rear wheels from spinning even when DSC is switched off and in M Dynamic Mode, so that optimum traction is always assured in all driving situations.

The driver is responsible adapting his or her driving behavior to the situation.

Servotronic

Concept

Servotronic is a speed-dependent power steering function.

The system provides the steering force with more support at low speeds than at higher ones. This makes it easier to park, for instance, and makes steering more direct when driving at faster speeds.

Furthermore, the steering force adapts according to the driving program, so that a direct, sporty feel or a comfortable steering response is conveyed.

Programs

Steering force setting options:

- ▷ COMFORT: low.
- ▷ SPORT: high.
- ▷ SPORT+: high.

Selecting a channel

The desired channel is selected using the Driving Dynamics Control, refer to page 137.

Driving Dynamics Control

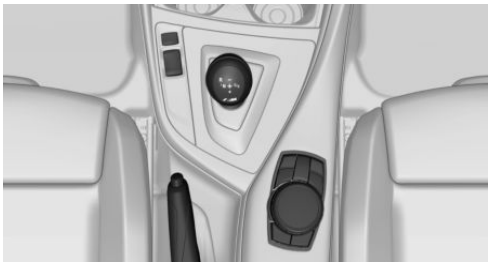
Concept

The Driving Dynamics Control helps to fine-tune the vehicle's settings and features. Various programs can be selected for this purpose. The Driving Dynamics Control and the DSC OFF buttons can each be used to activate a program.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Overview

Button in the vehicle



Operating the programs

Button	Program
	DSC OFF TRACTION
	SPORT+ SPORT COMFORT

Automatic program change

The system may automatically switch to COMFORT in the following situations:

- ▷ Failure of DSC Dynamic Stability Control.
- ▷ The vehicle has a flat tire.
- ▷ When activating cruise control in TRACTION or DSC OFF mode.

DSC OFF

When DSC OFF, refer to page 136, is active, driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

Engine tuning switches to a sportier setting.

TRACTION

When TRACTION is active, the vehicle has maximum traction on loose road surfaces. M Dynamic Mode MDM, refer to page 136, is activated. Driving stability is limited during acceleration and when driving in curves.

SPORT+

Concept

Consistently sporty driving with optimized chassis and suspension and adjusted drivetrain.

General information

M Dynamic Mode is switched on.

The driver handles several of the stabilization tasks.

Activating SPORT+

Press button repeatedly until SPORT+ appears in the instrument cluster and the DSC OFF indicator light lights up.

Automatic program change

When activating cruise control, the program automatically switches to SPORT mode.

Indicator/warning lights

SPORT+ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The DSC OFF indicator light is illuminated: M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated.

SPORT

Concept

Sporty tuning of the steering and drivetrain for greater driving agility.

The program can be configured to individual specifications. The configuration is stored for the driver profile currently in use.

Activating SPORT

Press button repeatedly until SPORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Configuring SPORT

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Driving mode"
4. "Configure SPORT"
5. Select the desired setting.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

COMFORT

Concept

For a balanced tuning with maximum driving stabilization.

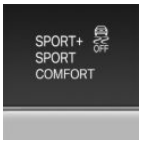
Activating COMFORT

Press button repeatedly until COMFORT is displayed in the instrument cluster.

In certain situations, the system automatically changes to the NORMAL program, automatic program change, refer to page 138.

Displays

Program selection



Pressing the button displays a list of the selectable programs. Depending on your vehicle's optional features, the list in the instrument cluster can differ from the illustration shown.

Selected program

The instrument cluster displays the selected program.

Drive-off assistant

Concept

This system supports driving off on inclines. The parking brake is not required.

Driving off with the drive-off assistant

1. Hold the vehicle in place with the foot brake.
2. Release the foot brake and drive off without delay.

After the foot brake is released, the vehicle is held in place for approx. 2 seconds.

Depending on the vehicle load, the vehicle may roll back slightly.

Driving comfort

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Cruise control

The concept

Using this system, a desired speed can be adjusted using the buttons on the steering wheel. The system maintains the desired speed. The system accelerates and brakes automatically as needed.

General information

Depending on the driving settings, the features of the cruise control can change in certain areas.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

WARNING

The use of the system can lead to an increased risk of accidents in the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ On winding roads.
- ▷ In heavy traffic.
- ▷ On slippery roads, in fog, snow, or wet conditions, or on a loose road surface.

There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Only use the system if driving at constant speed is possible.◂

WARNING

The desired speed can be incorrectly adjusted or called up by mistake. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust the desired speed to the traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

Overview

Buttons on the steering wheel

Button	Function
	Cruise control on/off, interrupting, refer to page 140.
SET	Store speed, refer to page 141.
RES	Resume speed, continue cruise control, refer to page 142.
	Rocker switch: adjust speed, refer to page 141.

Switching on/off and interrupting cruise control

Switching on

Press button on the steering wheel.

The marking in the speedometer is set to the current speed.

Cruise control can be used.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

Switching off

Press button on the steering wheel.

- ▷ If active: press twice.
- ▷ If interrupted: press once.

The displays go out. The stored desired speed is deleted.

Interrupting manually

When active, press the button on the steering wheel.

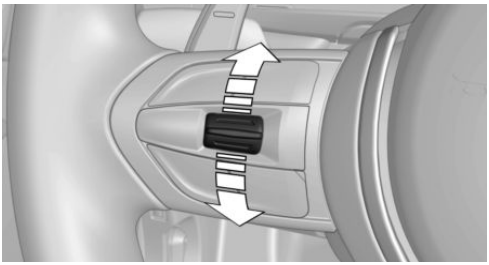
Interrupting automatically

The system is automatically interrupted in the following situations:

- ▷ When the driver applies the brakes.
- ▷ If the clutch pedal is depressed for a few seconds or released while a gear is not engaged.
- ▷ If the gear engaged is too high for the current speed.
- ▷ When M Dynamic Mode MDM is activated or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated.
- ▷ If DSC Dynamic Stability Control intervenes.
- ▷ When SPORT+ is activated with Driving Dynamics Control.

Setting the speed

Maintaining/storing the speed



Press the rocker switch while the system is interrupted.

When the system is switched on, the current speed is maintained and stored as the desired speed.

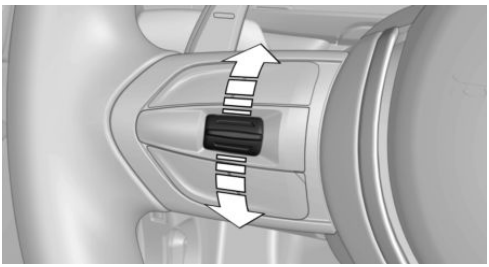
The stored speed is displayed in the speedometer and in the instrument cluster, refer to page 142.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control is switched on, if necessary.

The speed can also be stored by pressing a button.

Press button.

Changing the speed



Press the rocker switch up or down repeatedly until the desired speed is set.

If active, the displayed speed is stored and the vehicle reaches the stored speed when the road is clear.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed to the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by approx. 1 mph/1 km/h.
- ▷ Each time the rocker switch is pressed past the point of resistance, the desired speed increases or decreases by a maximum of 5 mph/10 km/h.

  The maximum speed that can be set depends on the vehicle.
- ▷ Pressing the rocker switch to the resistance point and holding it accelerates or decelerates the vehicle without requiring pressure on the accelerator pedal.

  After the rocker switch is released, the vehicle maintains its final speed. Pressing the switch beyond the resistance point causes the vehicle to accelerate more rapidly.

Continuing cruise control

General information

An interrupted cruise control can be continued by calling up the stored speed.

Make sure that the difference between current speed and stored speed is not too large before calling up the stored speed. Otherwise, unintentional braking or accelerating may occur.

In the following cases, the stored speed value is deleted and cannot be called up again:

- ▷ When the system is switched off.
- ▷ When the ignition is switched off.

Calling up stored speed

Press button on the steering wheel.

The stored speed is reached again and maintained.

Displays in the instrument cluster

Indicator lamp

Depending on how the vehicle is equipped, the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster indicates whether the system is switched on.

Desired speed and stored speed

- ▷ Marking lights up green: system is active, the marking indicates the desired speed.
- ▷ Marking lights up orange: system is interrupted, the marking indicates the stored speed.
- ▷ The marking does not light up: the system is switched off.

Status display

Selected desired speed.

If no speed is indicated, it is possible that the conditions necessary for operation are not currently fulfilled.

System limits

Engine power

The desired speed is also maintained downhill, but may not be maintained on uphill grades if engine power is insufficient.

PDC Park Distance Control

Concept

PDC is a support when parking. When you slowly approach an object in the rear, then the object is reported through:

- ▷ Signal tones.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

▷ Visual display.

General information

The ultrasound sensors for measuring the distances are located in the rear bumper.

The maneuvering range, depending on the obstacle and environmental conditions, is approx. 6 ft/2 m.

An acoustic warning is first given in the following situations:

▷ By the two rear corner sensors at approx. 24 in/60 cm from the object.

▷ By the rear middle sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m from the object.

▷ When a collision is imminent.

Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. Based on the limits of the system, it cannot independently react to all traffic situations. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◀

WARNING

Due to high speeds when PDC Park Distance Control is activated, the warning can be delayed due to physical circumstances. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Avoid approaching an object too fast. Avoid driving off fast while PDC Park Distance Control is not yet active.◀

Overview

Ultrasound sensors

Ultrasound sensors of the PDC, for instance in the bumpers.

Functional requirements

Ensure full functionality:

▷ Do not cover sensors, for instance with stickers, bicycle racks.

▷ Keep the sensors clean and unobstructed.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

With the engine running, engage lever in position R.

The rearview camera also switches on.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

WARNING

Signal tones

An intermittent tone indicates when the vehicle is approaching an object. E.g., if an object is detected to the left rear of the vehicle, a signal tone sounds from the left rear speaker.

The shorter the distance to the object, the shorter the intervals.

If the distance to a detected object is less than approx. 10 inches/25 cm, a continuous tone is sounded.

Volume

The ratio of the PDC signal tone volume to the entertainment volume can be adjusted.

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "iDrive settings"
3. "Tone"
4. "Volume settings"

5. "PDC"
6. Set the desired value.

The setting is stored for the driver profile currently used.

Visual warning

The approach of the vehicle to an object is shown on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already displayed on the Control Display before a signal sounds.

A display appears as soon as Park Distance Control (PDC) is activated.

The range of the sensors is represented in the colors green, yellow and red.

When the image of the rearview camera is displayed, the switch can be made to PDC:

1. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. "Rear view camera"

System limits

Safety information

WARNING

The system can react not at all, too late, incorrectly, or without justification due to the system limits. There is a risk of accidents or risk of damage to property. Follow the information regarding the system limits and actively intervene, if needed.◀

Limits of ultrasonic measurement

Ultrasonic measurements might not function in the following situations:

- For small children and animals.
- For persons with certain clothing, for instance coats.
- With external interference of the ultrasound, for instance from passing vehicles or loud machines.
- When sensors are dirty, iced over, damaged or out of position.
- Under certain weather conditions such as high relative humidity, wet conditions, snowfall, extreme heat, or strong wind.
- With tow bars and trailer couplings of other vehicles.
- With thin or wedge-shaped objects.
- With moving objects.
- With elevated, protruding objects such as ledges or cargo.
- With objects with corners and sharp edges.
- With objects with a fine surface structure such as fences.
- For objects with porous surfaces.
- If cargo protrudes.
- Low objects already displayed, for instance curbs, can move into the blind area of the sensors before or after a continuous tone sounds.

False warnings

The system may issue a warning under the following conditions even though there is no obstacle within the detection range:

- In heavy rain.
- When sensors are very dirty or covered with ice.
- When sensors are covered in snow.
- On rough road surfaces.
- On uneven surfaces, such as speed bumps.
- In large buildings with right angles and smooth walls, for instance in underground garages.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- In automatic vehicle washes.
- Due to heavy exhaust.
- Due to other ultrasound sources, for instance sweeping machines, high pressure steam cleaners or neon lights.

As soon as the malfunction due to other ultrasound sources is no longer present, the system is again fully functional.

Malfunction

A Check Control message is displayed.

The range of the sensors is shown as a shaded area on the Control Display.

PDC has failed. Have the system checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Rearview camera

Concept

The rearview camera provides assistance in parking and maneuvering backwards. The area behind the vehicle is shown on the Control Display.

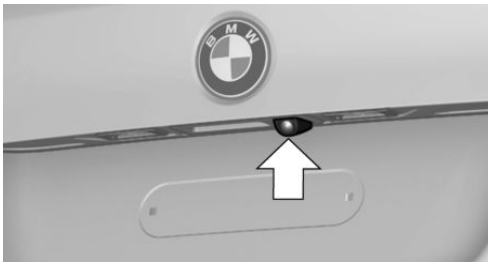
Safety information

WARNING

The system does not relieve from personal responsibility to assess the traffic situation. There is a risk of an accident. Adjust driving style to traffic conditions. Watch traffic and vehicle surroundings closely and actively intervene where appropriate.◂

Overview

Camera



The camera lens is located in the handle of the tailgate.

The image quality may be impaired by dirt. If necessary, clean the camera lens.

Switching on/off

Switching on automatically

The system is switched on automatically if selector lever position R is engaged when the engine is running.

The rearview camera image is displayed if the system was switched on via iDrive.

Automatic deactivation during forward travel

The system switches off when a certain driving distance or speed is exceeded.

Switch the system back on, if needed.

Switching the view via iDrive

With PDC Park Distance Control activated:

1. Move the Controller to the left, if needed.
2. "Rear view camera"

The rearview camera image is displayed.

Display on the Control Display

Functional requirement

- The rearview camera is switched on.

- The tailgate is fully closed.
- Keep the recording range of the camera clear. Protruding cargo can lead to malfunctions.

Activating assistance functions

More than one assistance function can be active at the same time.

Move the Controller to the left, if needed.

- Parking aid lines

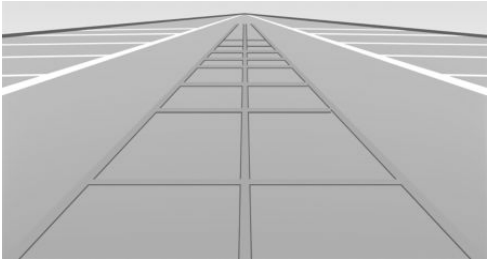
  "Parking aid lines"

  Lanes and turning radius are indicated.
- Obstacle marking

  "Obstacle marking"

  If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, spatially shaped markings are displayed.

Pathway lines

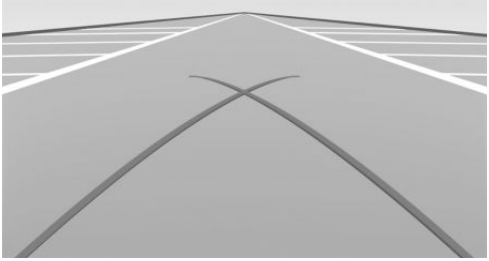


Pathway lines can be superimposed on the image of the rearview camera.

Pathway lines help you to estimate the space required when parking and maneuvering on level roads.

Pathway lines depend on the current steering angle and are continuously adjusted to the steering wheel movements.

Turning radius lines

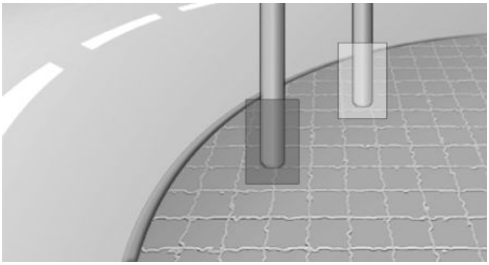


Turning radius lines can only be superimposed on the rearview camera image together with pathway lines.

Turning radius lines show the course of the smallest possible turning radius on a level road.

Only one turning radius line is displayed after the steering wheel is turned past a certain angle.

Obstacle marking

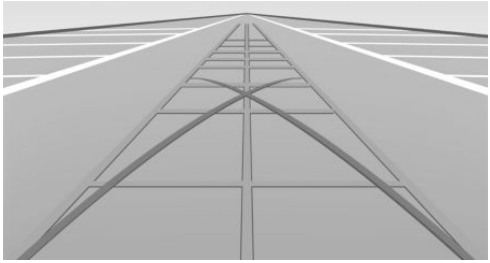


If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, obstacle markings can be faded into the image of the rearview camera.

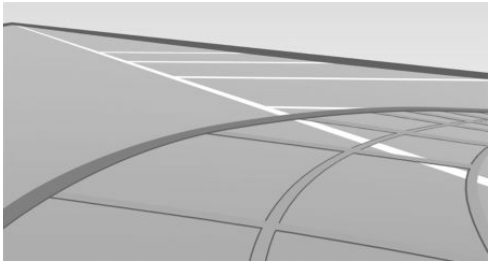
The colored thresholds of the obstacle markings match the markings of the PDC Park Distance Control.

Parking using pathway and turning radius lines

1. Position the vehicle so that the turning radius lines lead to within the limits of the parking space.



2. Turn the steering wheel to the point where the pathway line covers the corresponding turning radius line.



Display settings

Brightness.

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the left if needed.
2. ☼ Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the Controller.

Contrast.

With the rearview camera switched on:

1. Move the Controller to the left if needed.
2. ◐ Select the symbol.
3. Turn the Controller until the desired setting is reached, and press the Controller.

System limits

Detection of objects

Very low obstacles as well as high, protruding objects such as ledges may not be detected by the system.

If the vehicle is equipped accordingly, some assistance functions also consider data from PDC Park Distance Control.

Follow the notes in the PDC Park Distance Control chapter.

The objects displayed on the Control Display may be closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance from the objects on the display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Climate control

Vehicle features and options

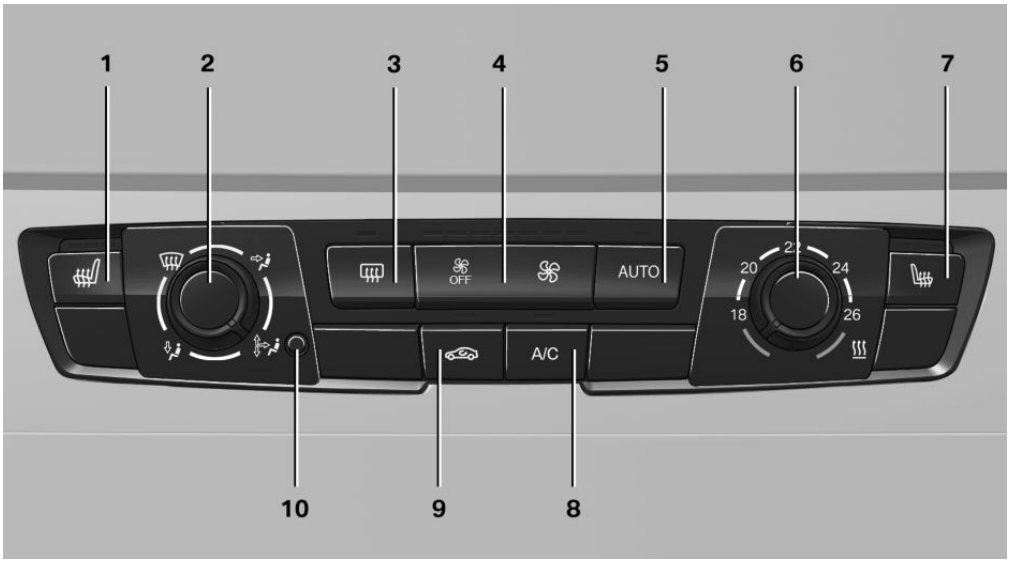
This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Interior air quality

The air quality inside the vehicle is improved by an emissions-tested interior, a microfilter, and a climate-control system for regulating temperature, air flow, and recirculated-air mode.

In addition there are other functions which depend on the vehicle's equipment, for instance microfilter/activated-charcoal filter, automatic climate control with automatic recirculated-air control AUC, and parked-car ventilation.

Automatic climate control



1 Seat heating, left 70
2 Air distribution settings
3 Rear window defroster
4 Air flow
5 AUTO program
6 Temperature
7 Seat heating, right 70
8 Air conditioning
9 Recirculated-air mode
10 Interior temperature sensor

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

- ▷ Rear window defroster.
- ▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Press the left button for the minimum speed.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if necessary by using the maximum cooling or heating power, and then keeps it constant.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 176, develops and drains underneath the vehicle. This is normal.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Depending on the selected temperature and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The air conditioning, refer to page 149, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Recirculated-air mode

Concept

You may react to unpleasant odors or pollutants in the immediate environment by temporarily suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air flow within the vehicle.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

To prevent window fogging, recirculated-air mode switches off automatically after a certain amount of time, depending on the environmental conditions.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

If the windows fog over, switch off recirculated-air mode and increase the air flow, if needed.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The air flow from the air conditioner may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Turn the wheel to select the desired program or the desired intermediate setting.

- ▷ Windows.
- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region, and floor area.
- ▷ Floor area.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Make the following settings to defrost the windows and remove condensation:

- ▷ Direct the air distribution onto the windows.
- ▷ Increasing the air flow.
- ▷ Increase the temperature.
- ▷ Switch on the air conditioning if needed.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

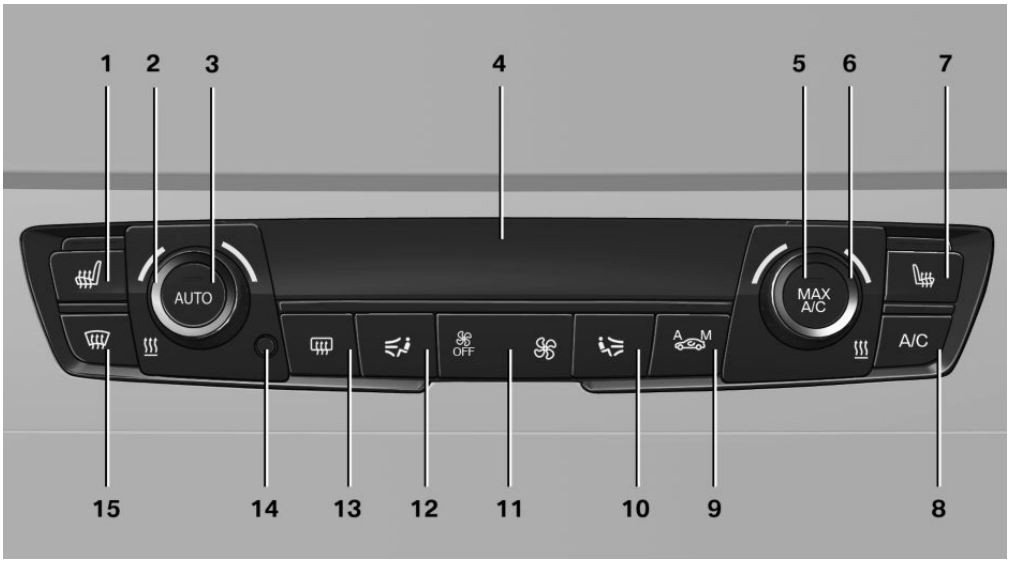
Microfilter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter filters dust and pollen from the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 210.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Automatic climate control with enhanced features



1 Seat heating, left 70
2 Temperature, left
3 AUTO program
4 Display
5 Maximum cooling
6 Temperature, right
7 Seat heating, right 70
8 Air conditioning
9 Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode
10 Air distribution, right
11 Air flow, AUTO intensity
12 Air distribution, left
13 Rear window defroster
14 Interior temperature sensor — always keep clear
15 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Climate control functions in detail

Switching the system on/off

Switching on

Press any button except for the following:

▷ Rear window defroster.
▷ Seat heating.

Switching off

Press the left button for the minimum speed.

Temperature

Concept

The automatic climate control achieves the set temperature as quickly as possible, if neces-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

sary by using the maximum cooling or heating power, and then keeps it constant.

Settings

Turn the ring to set the desired temperature.

The automatic climate control reaches this temperature as quickly as possible, if needed, by increasing the cooling or heating output, and then keeps it constant.

Do not rapidly switch between different temperature settings. Otherwise, the automatic climate control will not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.

Air conditioning

Concept

The air in the car's interior will be cooled and dehumidified and, depending on the temperature setting, warmed again.

The car's interior can only be cooled with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Air conditioning is switched on or off.

Depending on the weather, the windshield and side windows may fog up briefly when the engine is started.

The air conditioning is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water, refer to page 176, develops and drains underneath the vehicle. This is normal.

Maximum cooling

Concept

The system is set to the lowest temperature, optimum air flow and recirculated-air mode.

General information

The function is available above an external temperature of approx. 32 °F/0 °C And with the engine running.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Air flows out of the vents to the upper body region. The vents need to be open for this.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

AUTO program

Concept

Air flow, air distribution and temperature are controlled automatically.

Switching on/off

Press button.

Depending on the selected temperature, the intensity of the AUTO program, and outside influences, the air is directed to the windshield, side windows, upper body, and into the floor area.

The air conditioning, refer to page 152, is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program so as to prevent window condensation as much as possible.

In the AUTO program, the air flow may be reduced during a phone call on the hands-free system.

Intensity

With the AUTO program switched on, the intensity can be set. This changes the automatic control for the air flow and air distribution.

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase intensity.

The selected intensity is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

Concept

The automatic recirculated-air control AUC recognizes odors or pollutants in the outside air. The outside air supply is shut off and the interior air is recirculated.

General information

If the system is activated, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

If the system is deactivated, outside air continuously flows into the car's interior.

With constant recirculated-air mode, the air quality in the car's interior deteriorates and the fogging of the windows increases.

Switching on/off

Press button repeatedly to select an operating mode:

- ▷ LEDs off: outside air flows in continuously.
- ▷ Left LED on, automatic recirculated-air control: a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off automatically.
- ▷ Right LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air into the vehicle is permanently blocked.

Recirculated-air mode switches off automatically at low external temperatures after a certain amount of time in order to avoid window fogging.

If the windows are fogged over, switch off the recirculated-air mode and press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor. Make sure that air can flow to the windshield.

Controlling the air flow manually

Concept

The air flow for climate control can be adjusted manually.

General information

To manually adjust air flow switch off AUTO program first.

Operation

Press the left or right side of the button: decrease or increase air flow.

The selected air flow is shown on the display of the automatic climate control.

The air flow of the automatic climate control may be reduced automatically to save battery power.

Controlling the air distribution manually

Concept

The air distribution for climate control can be adjusted manually.

Operation

Press button repeatedly to select a program:

- ▷ Upper body region.
- ▷ Upper body region and floor area.
- ▷ Floor area.
- ▷ Windows and floor area: driver's side only.
- ▷ Windows, upper body region and floor area: driver's side only.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

If the windows are fogged over, press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Concept

Ice and condensation are quickly removed from the windshield and the front side windows.

Switching on/off

Press button.

The LED is illuminated with the system switched on.

For this purpose, point the side vents towards the side windows as needed.

The air flow can be adjusted with the air flow active.

If the windows are fogged over, you can also switch on the air conditioning or press the AUTO button to utilize the condensation sensor.

Rear window defroster

Press button. The LED lights up.

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

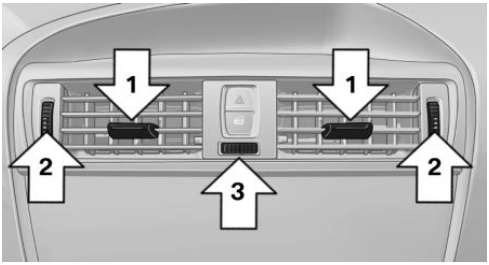
Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

In external and recirculated-air mode the microfilter/activated charcoal filter filters dust, pollen, and gaseous pollutants out of the air.

Have this filter changed during vehicle maintenance, refer to page 210.

Ventilation

Front ventilation



- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheels for opening and closing the vents continuously, arrows 2.
- ▷ Thumbwheel to vary the ventilation temperature in the upper body region, arrow 3.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

  This does not change the set interior temperature for the driver and front passenger.

Settings

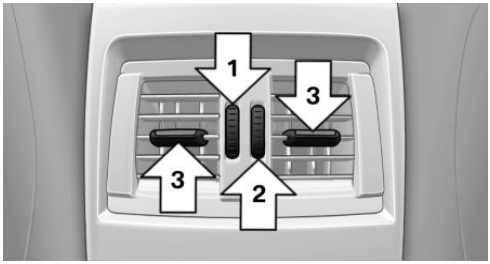
- ▷ Ventilation for cooling:

  Direct vent in your direction when car's interior is too hot.
- ▷ Draft-free ventilation:

  Adjust the vent to let the air flow past you.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Ventilation in the rear



- ▷ Thumbwheel for variable opening and closing of the vents, arrow 1.
- ▷ Thumbwheel to vary the ventilation temperature, arrow 2.

  Toward blue: colder.

  Toward red: warmer.

  This does not change the adjusted interior temperature.
- ▷ Lever for changing the air flow direction, arrow 3.

Parked-car ventilation

Concept

The parked-car ventilation ventilates the car's interior and lowers its temperature, if needed.

General information

The parked-car ventilation can be switched on and off directly or by using two preset activation times. The system remains switched on for 30 minutes.

The parked-car ventilation system is operated via iDrive.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Direct operation: vehicle is in radio-ready state.
- ▷ Direct operation or preset activation time: does not depend on external temperature.
- ▷ Battery is sufficiently charged.

  If parked-car ventilation is switched on, the vehicle battery will be discharged. Thus, limit the maximum activation time to save the vehicle battery. The system will be available again after the engine is started or after a short trip.
- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle's date and time are set correctly.
- ▷ Open the vents to allow air to flow out.

Switching on/off directly

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Activate comfort ventilation now"

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes if the system is switched on.

Preselecting the activation time

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "Comfort ventilation"
5. Select the desired activation time.
6. Set the desired time.

Activating the activation time

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle settings"
3. If necessary, "Climate functions"
4. "For start time at:"

   Activate the desired activation time.

The symbol on the automatic climate control lights up when the activation time is activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

The symbol on the automatic climate control flashes when the system has been switched on.

The system will only be switched on within the next 24 hours. After that, it needs to be reactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Interior equipment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Universal Integrated Remote Control

Concept

The integrated Universal Remote Control in the interior mirror can operate up to 3 functions of remote-controlled systems, such as garage door drives, barriers, or lighting systems. The Integrated Universal Remote Control replaces up to 3 different hand-held transmitters. To operate the remote control, the buttons on the interior mirror must be programmed with the desired functions. The hand-held transmitter for the particular system is required in order to program the remote control.

Before selling the vehicle, delete the stored functions for the sake of security.

Safety information

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, for instance the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◀

Compatibility

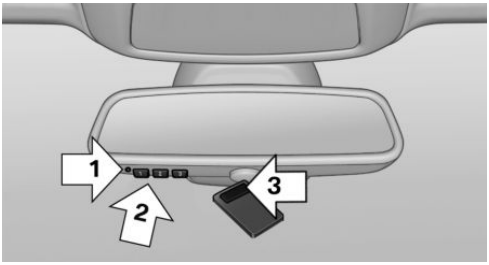
If this symbol is printed on the packaging or in the owner's manual of the system to be controlled, the system is generally compatible with the integrated Universal Remote Control.

If you have any questions, please contact:

- ▷ A dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.
- ▷ www.homelink.com on the Internet.

HomeLink is a registered trademark of Gentex Corporation.

Control elements on the interior mirror



- ▷ LED, arrow 1.
- ▷ Buttons, arrow 2.
- ▷ The hand-held transmitter, arrow 3, is required for programming.

Programming

General information

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Initial setup:

   Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for ap-

proximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes. This erases all programming of the buttons on the interior mirror.

3. Hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.
4. Simultaneously press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter and the button to be programmed on the interior mirror. The LED on the interior mirror will begin flashing slowly.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at least 60 seconds, change the distance between the interior mirror and the hand-held transmitter and repeat the step. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.
6. To program other functions on other buttons, repeat steps 3 to 5.

The systems can be controlled using the interior mirror buttons.

Special feature of the rolling code wireless system

If you are unable to operate the system after repeated programming, please check if the system to be controlled features a rolling code radio system.

Read the system's owner's manual, or press the programmed button on the interior mirror longer. If the LED on the interior mirror starts flashing rapidly and then stays lit constantly for 2 seconds, the system features a rolling code radio system. Flashing and continuous illumination of the LED will repeat for approximately 20 seconds.

For systems with a rolling code radio system, the integrated Universal Remote Control and the system also have to be synchronized.

Please read the owner's manual to find out how to synchronize the system.

Synchronizing is easier with the aid of a second person.

Synchronizing the universal remote control with the system:

1. Park the vehicle within range of the remote-controlled system.
2. Program the desired button on the interior mirror as described.
3. Locate and press the synchronizing button on the system being programmed. You have approx. 30 seconds for the next step.
4. Hold down the programmed button on the interior mirror for approximately 3 seconds and then release it. If necessary, repeat this step up to three times in order to finish synchronization. Once synchronization is complete, the programmed function will be carried out.

Reprogramming individual buttons

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press and hold the interior mirror button to be programmed.
3. As soon as the interior mirror LED starts flashing slowly, hold the hand-held transmitter for the system to be controlled approx. 1 to 3 inches/2.5 to 8 cm away from the buttons of the interior mirror. The required distance depends on the hand-held transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

4. Likewise, press and hold the button of the desired function on the hand-held transmitter.
5. Release both buttons as soon as the interior mirror LED flashes more rapidly. The LED flashing faster indicates that the button on the interior mirror has been programmed. The system can then be controlled by the button on the interior mirror.

   If the LED does not flash faster after at most 60 seconds, change the distance and repeat the programming starting with step 4. Several more attempts at different distances may be necessary. Wait at least 15 seconds between attempts.

   Canada: if programming with the hand-held transmitter was interrupted, hold down the interior mirror button and repeatedly press and release the hand-held transmitter button for 2 seconds.

Operation

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when operating remote-controlled systems, for instance the garage door, using the integrated Universal Remote Control. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Make sure that the area of movement of the respective system is clear during programming and operation. Also follow the safety instructions of the hand-held transmitter.◂

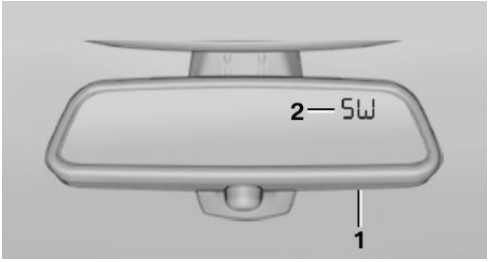
The system, such as the garage door, can be operated using the button on the interior mirror while the engine is running or when the ignition is started. To do this, hold down the button within receiving range of the system until the function is activated. The interior mirror LED stays lit while the wireless signal is being transmitted.

Deleting stored functions

All stored functions will be deleted. The functions cannot be deleted individually. Press and hold the two outer buttons on the interior mirror simultaneously for approximately 20 seconds until the LED on the interior mirror flashes rapidly.

Digital compass

Overview



1 Control button
2 Mirror display

Mirror display

The point of the compass is displayed in the mirror when driving straight.

Operating concept

Various functions can be called up by pressing the control button with a pointed object, such as the tip of a ballpoint pen or similar object. The following setting options are displayed in succession, depending on how long the control button is pressed:

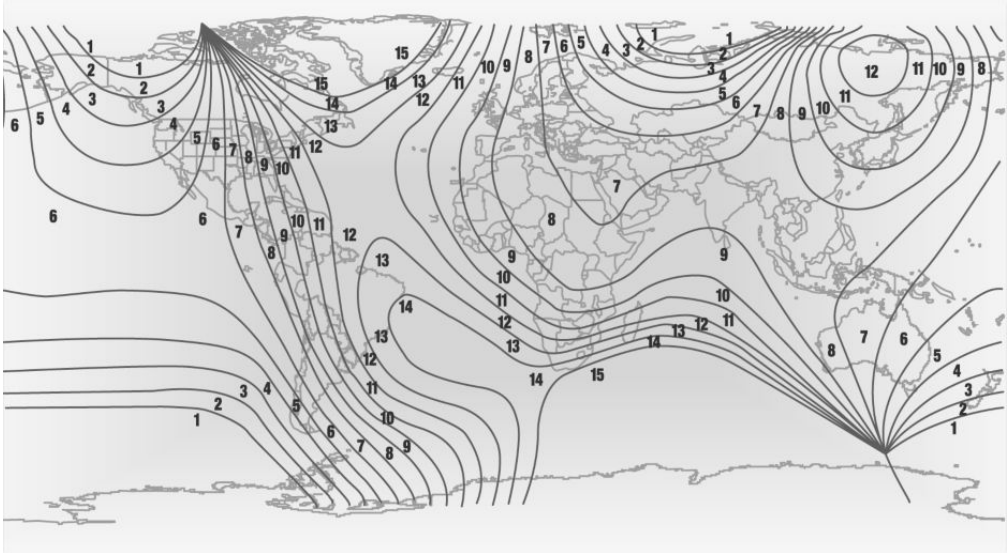
- ▷ Pressed briefly: turns display on/off.
- ▷ 3 to 6 seconds: compass zone setting.
- ▷ 6 to 9 seconds: compass calibration.
- ▷ 9 to 12 seconds: left/right-hand steering setting.
- ▷ 12 to 15 seconds: language setting.

Setting the compass zones

Sets the particular compass zones on the vehicle so that the compass operates correctly; refer to World map with compass zones.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

World map with magnetic zones



Procedure

1. Press and hold the control button for approx. 3 to 4 seconds. The number of the set compass zone appears in the mirror.
2. To change the zone setting, press the control button quickly and repeatedly until the number of the compass zone that corresponds with your location appears in the mirror.

The set zone is stored automatically. The compass is ready for use again after approximately 10 seconds.

Calibrating the digital compass

The digital compass must be calibrated in the event of the following:

- ▷ The wrong compass point is displayed.
- ▷ The point of the compass displayed does not change despite changing the direction of travel.
- ▷ Not all points of the compass are displayed.

Procedure

1. Make sure that there are no large metallic objects or overhead power lines near the vehicle and that there is sufficient room to drive around in a circle.
2. Set the currently applicable compass zone.
3. Press and hold the control button for approx. 6 to 7 seconds so that "C" appears on the display. Next, drive in a complete circle at least once at a speed of no more than 4 mph/7 km/h. If calibration is successful, the "C" is replaced by the points of the compass.

Left/right-hand steering

The digital compass is already set for right or left-hand steering at the factory.

Setting the language

Press and hold the control button for approx. 12 to 13 seconds. Briefly press the control button again to switch between English "E" and German "O".

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Settings are stored automatically after approximately 10 seconds.

Sun visor

Glare shield

Fold the sun visor down or up.

Vanity mirror

A vanity mirror is located in the sun visor behind a cover. When the cover is opened, the mirror lighting switches on.

Ashtray/cigarette lighter

Ashtray

Opening

Slide the cover forward.

Installing

The ashtray can be inserted in both cup holders.

Emptying

Take out the insert.

Cigarette lighter

WARNING

Contact with hot heating elements or the hot socket of the cigarette lighter can cause burns. Flammable materials can ignite if the cigarette lighter falls down or is held against the respective objects. There is a risk of fire and injuries. Hold the cigarette lighter by its handle. Make sure that children do not use the cigarette lighter and burn themselves.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

Slide the cover forward.

The cigarette lighter is located between the cup holders.

Push in the cigarette lighter.

The cigarette lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

Sockets

General information

The lighter socket can be used as a socket for electrical equipment while the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

The total load of all sockets must not exceed 140 watts at 12 volts.

Do not damage the socket by using non-compatible connectors.

Safety information

WARNING

Devices and cables in the unfolding area of the airbags, for instance portable navigation devices, can hinder the unfolding of the airbag or be thrown around in the car's interior when unfolding. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that devices and cables are not in the airbag's area of unfolding.◀

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

NOTE

If metal objects fall into the socket, they can cause a short circuit. There is a risk of property damage. Replace the cigarette lighter or socket cover again after using the socket.◀

Front center console

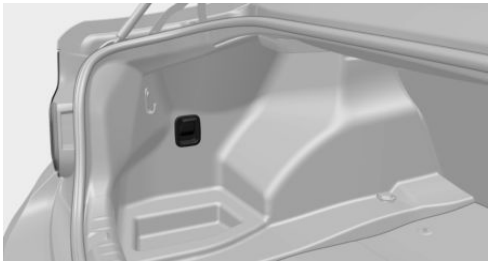
Slide the cover forward.

Remove the socket or cigarette lighter cover.

Rear center console

Remove the cover.

In the cargo area



The socket is located on the left side in the cargo area.

USB interface

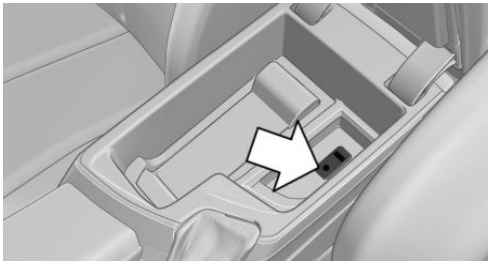
Concept

Mobile devices with USB port can be connected to the USB interface.

General information

Follow the information regarding the connection of mobile devices to the USB interface in the section on USB connections, refer to page 39.

In the center armrest



A USB interface is located in the center armrest.

In the center console

Slide the cover forward.

A USB interface is located in the center console.

Cargo area

Enlarging the cargo area

Concept

The cargo area can be enlarged by folding down the rear seat backrest.

General information

The rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 60 to 40. The left rear seat backrest is connected to the center section.

With the through-loading system: the rear seat backrest is divided at a ratio of 40/20/40.

The rear seat backrests can be folded down from the cargo area. The center section can be separately folded down from the rear.

Safety information

WARNING

Danger of jamming with folding down the backrests. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest and the of the head restraint is clear prior to folding down.◀

WARNING

If a rear seat backrest is not locked, unsecured cargo can be thrown into the car's interior, for instance in case of an accident, braking or evasive maneuver. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the rear seat backrest is locked after folding it back.◀

WARNING

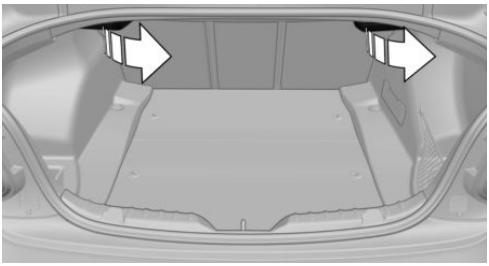
The stability of the child restraint system is limited or compromised with incorrect seat adjustment or improper installation of the child seat. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Make sure that the child restraint system fits securely against the backrest. If possible, adjust the backrest tilt for all affected backrests and correctly adjust the seats. Make sure that seats and backrests are securely engaged. If possible, adjust the height of the head restraints or remove them.◀

NOTE

Vehicle parts can be damaged when folding down the rear backrest. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the area of movement of the rear backrest including head restraint is clear when folding down.◀

Folding down the rear seat backrest from the cargo area

1. Pull the corresponding lever in the cargo area to release the rear seat backrest.

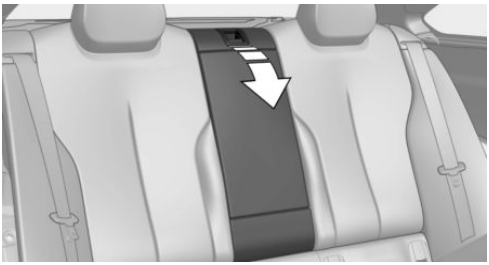


2. The unlocked rear seat backrest moves forward slightly.
3. Fold the rear seat backrest forward.

Fold back the backrest

Return the rear seat backrest to the seating position and engage it.

Fold down the middle section



Reach into the recess and pull the center section forward.

Storage compartments

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Safety information

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

NOTE

Anti-slip pads such as anti-slip mats can damage the dashboard. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use anti-slip pads.◀

Storage compartments

The following storage compartments are available in the car's interior:

- ▷ Glove compartment on the front passenger side, refer to page 165.
- ▷ Glove compartment on the driver's side, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Compartments in the doors, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Front storage compartment, in front of the cup holders, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the front center armrest, refer to page 166.
- ▷ Nets on the backrests of the front seats.
- ▷ Storage compartment in the rear center console, refer to page 167.
- ▷ With two rear seats: Storage compartment between the rear seats, refer to page 167.

Glove compartment

Front passenger side

Safety information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening

Pull the handle.

The light in the glove compartment switches on.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Closing

Fold cover closed.

Locking

The glove compartment can be locked with an integrated key to separately secure the tailgate, refer to page 57, for instance.

This prevents access to the glove compartment and to the cargo area.

After the glove compartment is locked, the remote control can be handed over, such as at a hotel, without the integrated key.

Driver's side

Safety information

WARNING

Folded open, the glove compartment protrudes in the vehicle's interior. Objects in the glove compartment can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Always close the glove compartment immediately after using it.◀

Opening

Pull the handle.

Closing

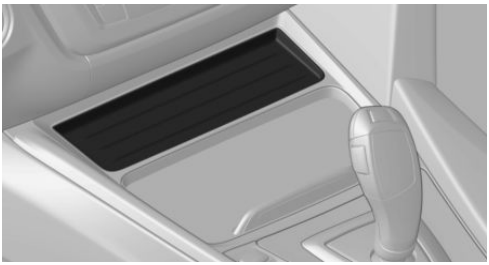
Fold cover closed.

Compartments in the doors

WARNING

Breakable objects, for instance glass bottles or glasses, can break in the event of an accident. Broken glass can be scattered in the car's interior. There is a risk of injury. Do not use any breakable objects while driving. Only stow breakable objects in lockable storage compartments.◀

Front storage compartment



There is a storage compartment in the center console.

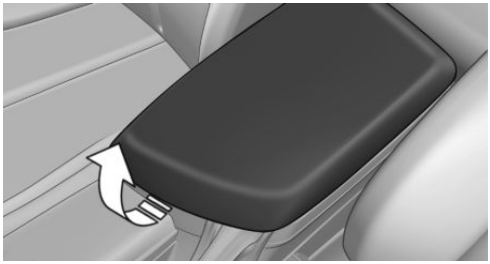
Center armrest

Front

General information

A storage compartment is located in the center armrest between the front seats.

Opening



Fold the center armrest up.

Repositioning

The center armrest can be pushed forward or backward and engages in the end positions.

Connection for an external audio device

An external audio device, for instance an MP3 player, can be connected via the USB audio interface in the center armrest.

Storage compartment in the rear

A storage compartment is located in the center console.

Storage compartment between the rear seats

There is a storage compartment between the rear seats.

Cup holders

Safety information

WARNING

Unsuitable containers in the cup holder and hot beverages can damage the cup holder and increase the risk of injury in the event of an accident. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Use light-weight, unbreakable, and sealable containers. Do not transport hot beverages. Do not force objects into the cup holder.◀

Front

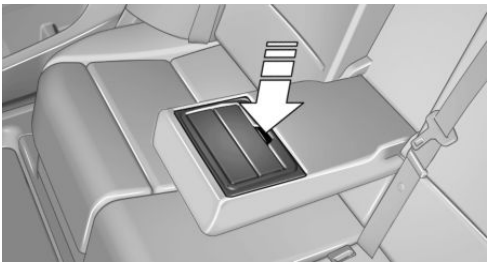
Two cup holders are located in the center console.

To open: slide the cover forward.

To close: slide the cover backward.

Rear

In the center armrest.



Pull the center armrest forward at the strap.

To open: press the button.

To close: push both covers back in, one after the other.

NOTE

With an open cup holder, the center armrest cannot be folded back up. There is a risk of property damage. Press back the covers before the center armrest is folded up.◀

Clothes hooks

Safety information

WARNING

Clothing articles on the clothes hooks can obstruct the view while driving. There is a risk of an accident. When suspending clothing articles from the hooks, ensure that they will not obstruct the driver's view.◀

WARNING

Improper use of the clothes hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., clothing articles, from the clothes hooks.◀

General information

The clothes hooks are located in the rear.

Storage compartments in the cargo area

Storage compartment

One storage compartment each is located on the left and right side.

Net for storage compartment

Smaller objects can be stored in the net of right storage compartment.

Multi-function hook

WARNING

Improper use of the multi-function hooks can lead to a risk of objects flying about during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Only hang lightweight objects, e.g., shopping bags, from the multi-function hooks. Only transport heavy luggage in the cargo area if it has been appropriately secured.◀

A multi-function hook is located on each side of the cargo area.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

To secure the cargo, refer to page 178, there are two or four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Floor net

The floor net can also be used to secure the cargo, refer to page 178, and store small parts.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Driving tips

This chapter provides you with information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating modes.

BMW M2 Technology

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

High-performance engine

General information

With a displacement of 3 liters, the high-performance engine generates a maximum power of 365 hp and a maximum torque of 343 lb ft/465 Nm with Overboost 369 lb ft/500 Nm. With its spontaneous response behavior, a speed range of wide utility results. The maximum engine speed is 7,000 rpm and is electronically controlled. Because of the high engine dynamics, the maximum engine speed with the vehicle stationary is reduced.

Warm-up

During the engine warm-up phase, the high-performance engine has a somewhat rougher running behavior because of the emission controls.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the nature of the system.

Overboost

Overboost temporarily increases the maximum torque to 369 lb ft/500 Nm, for example when passing.

For this purpose, fully depress the accelerator pedal.

Compound brake

The high-performance braking system has perforated compound brake discs.

Because of particular structural characteristics, there may be operation-related noises during braking. The functional noises have no effect on the performance, operational reliability, and durability of the brake.

Drivetrain

With this vehicle, particular value was placed on the direct connection from engine to the drivetrain. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drivetrain, as is typical in a sports vehicle, the transmission of the torque also gives acoustic feedback.

When there are load changes, this may result in clicking noises. The clicking noises do not impair the operation or the service life of the components.

Driving on racetracks

Higher mechanical and thermal loads during racetrack operation lead to increased wear. This wear is not covered by the warranty. The vehicle is not designed for use in motor sports competition.

The standard brake linings and the wear indicators are not designed for racetrack operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Things to remember when driving

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Breaking-in period

General information

Moving parts need to begin working together smoothly.

The following instructions will help you to achieve a long vehicle life and good efficiency.

During break-in, do not use the Launch Control.

Safety information

WARNING

Due to new parts and components, safety and driver assistance systems can react with a delay. There is a risk of an accident. After installing new parts or with a new vehicle, drive conservatively and intervene early if necessary. Observe the break-in procedures of the respective parts and components.◂

Engine, transmission, and axle drive

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed 5,500 rpm and 106 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full load or kickdown under all circumstances.

At 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Have drive-in checkup maintenance performed.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,100 miles/5,000 km

The engine and road speed can gradually be increased to a constant speed of 137 mph/220 km/h.

Use the maximum speed of 155 mph/250 km/h only briefly, e.g., when passing.

Tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brake discs and brake pads only reach their full effectiveness after approx. 300 miles/500 km. Drive moderately during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch reaches its optimal level only after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

The same break-in procedures should be observed if any of the components above-mentioned have to be renewed in the course of the vehicle's operating life.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

General driving notes

Closing the tailgate

Safety information

WARNING

An open tailgate protrudes from the vehicle and can endanger occupants and other traffic participants or damage the vehicle in the event of an accident, braking or evasive maneuvers. In addition, exhaust fumes may enter the car's interior. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. Do not drive with the tailgate open.◀

Driving with the tailgate open

If driving with the tailgate open cannot be avoided:

- ▷ Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Greatly increase the air flow from the vents.
- ▷ Drive moderately.

Hot exhaust system

WARNING

During driving operation, high temperatures can occur underneath the vehicle body, e.g., caused by the exhaust gas system. If combustible materials, such as leaves or grass, come in contact with hot parts of the exhaust gas system, these materials can ignite. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Do not remove the heat shields installed and never apply undercoating to them. Make sure that no combustible materials can come in contact with hot vehicle parts in driving operation, idle or during parking. Do not touch the hot exhaust system.◀

Mobile communication devices in the vehicle

WARNING

Vehicle electronics and mobile phones can influence one another. There is radiation due to the transmission operations of mobile phones. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. If possible, in the vehicle's interior use only mobile phones with direct connections to an exterior antenna in order to exclude mutual interference and deflect the radiation from the vehicle's interior.◀

Hydroplaning

On wet or slushy roads, a wedge of water can form between the tires and road surface.

This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning. It is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.

Driving through water

General information

When driving through water, observe the following:

- ▷ Drive through calm water only.
- ▷ Drive through water only if it is not deeper than maximum 9.8 in/25 cm.
- ▷ Drive through water no faster than walking speed, up to 3 mph/5 km/h.

Safety information

NOTE

When driving too quickly through too deep water, water can enter into the engine compartment, the electrical system or the transmission. There is a risk of property damage. When driving through water, do not exceed the maximum indicated water level and the maximum speed for driving through water.◀

Braking safely

The vehicle is equipped with ABS as a standard feature.

Perform an emergency stop in situations that require such.

Steering is still responsive. You can still avoid any obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of the brake pedal indicates that ABS is in its active mode.

In certain braking situations, the perforated brake discs can emit functional noises. Functional noises have no effect on the performance and operational reliability of the brake.

Objects in the movement area around pedals and floor area

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet, salted, or in heavy rain, gently press the brake pedal every few miles.

Ensure that this action does not endanger other traffic.

The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

In this way braking efficiency will be available when you need it.

Hills

General information

Drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear that requires least braking effort. Otherwise, the brakes may overheat and reduce brake efficiency.

Manual transmission:

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down, going all the way to first gear, if needed.

M double-clutch transmission:

You can increase the engine's braking effect by shifting down in sequential mode, refer to page 96.

Safety information

WARNING

Light but consistent brake pressure can lead to high temperatures, brakes wearing out and possibly even brake failure. There is a risk of an accident. Avoid placing excessive stress on the brake system.◀

WARNING

In idle state or with the engine switched off, safety-relevant functions, for instance engine braking effect, braking force boost and steering assistance, are restricted or not available at all. There is a risk of an accident. Do not drive in idle state or with the engine switched off.◀

Brake disc corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and contamination on the brake pads are increased by the following circumstances:

- ▷ Low mileage.
- ▷ Extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all.
- ▷ Infrequent use of the brakes.
- ▷ Aggressive, acidic, or alkaline cleaning agents.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Corrosion buildup on the brake discs will cause a pulsating effect on the brakes in their response - generally this cannot be corrected.

Condensation water under the parked vehicle

When using the automatic climate control, condensation water develops and collects underneath the vehicle.

Ground clearance

NOTE

If ground clearance is insufficient, there might be contact with the front or rear spoiler, e.g., when driving over curbs or entering into underground vehicle parking garages. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance available.◀

M Driver's Package: driving in the higher speed range

WARNING

Damage to vehicle components can negatively impact the driving performance at high speeds. This includes, among other things tires, underbody and parts for improving aerodynamics. There is a risk of an accident. Have damage corrected by a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Do not drive at high speeds until the damage is corrected.◀

Loading

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Safety information

WARNING

High gross weight can overheat the tires, damage them internally and cause a sudden drop in tire inflation pressure. Driving characteristics may be negatively impacted, reducing lane stability, lengthening the braking distances and changing the steering response. There is a risk of an accident. Pay attention to the permitted load capacity of the tires and never exceed the permitted gross weight.◀

WARNING

Loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle, e.g., mobile phones, can be thrown into the vehicle's interior while driving, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. There is a risk of injury. Secure loose objects or devices with a cable connection to the vehicle in the vehicle's interior.◀

WARNING

Improperly stowed objects can shift and be thrown into the vehicle's interior, e.g., in the event of an accident or during braking and evasive maneuvers. Vehicle occupants can be hit and injured. There is a risk of injury. Stow and secure objects and cargo properly.◀

NOTE

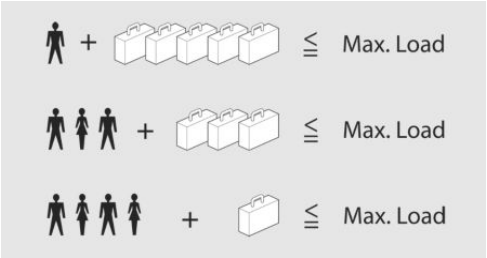
Fluids in the cargo area can cause damage. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo area.◀

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1,400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Load



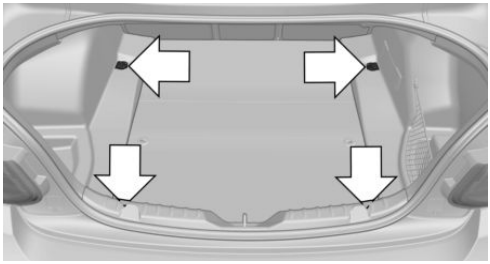
The maximum load is the sum of the weight of the occupants and the cargo.

The greater the weight of the occupants, the less cargo that can be transported.

Stowing and securing cargo

- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners on the cargo.
- ▷ Heavy cargo: stow as far forward as possible, directly behind and at the bottom of the rear passenger seat backrests.
- ▷ Very heavy cargo: when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each of the outer safety belts in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ If necessary, fold down the rear backrests to stow cargo.
- ▷ Do not stack cargo above the top edge of the backrests.
- ▷ Smaller and lighter cargo: secure with ratchet straps, the floor net, or draw straps.
- ▷ Larger and heavy cargo: secure with cargo straps.

Lashing eyes in the cargo area

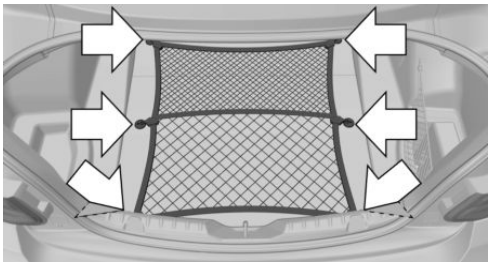


To secure the cargo there are two or four lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Attach load securing aids, such as lashing straps, retaining straps, draw straps or cargo nets, to the lashing eyes in the cargo area.

Floor net

To secure the cargo the floor net can also be used.



Hook the floor net into the fittings in the cargo area floor.

Roof-mounted luggage rack

General information

Roof racks are available as special accessories.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Safety information

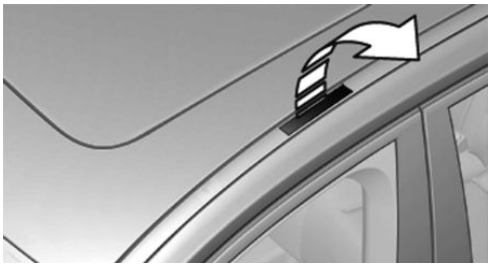
WARNING

When driving with roof load, e.g., with roof-mounted luggage rack, driving safety may not be ensured in driving-critical situations due to the elevated center of gravity. There is a risk of accidents or risk of property damage. Do not deactivate Dynamic Stability Control DSC when driving with roof load.◀

Securing

Follow the installation instructions of the roof rack.

Roof drip rail with flaps



The fixing points are located in the roof drip rail above the doors.

Fold the cover outward.

Loading

Because roof-mounted luggage racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on vehicle handling and steering response.

Therefore, note the following when loading and driving:

- ▷ Do not exceed the approved roof/axle loads and the approved gross vehicle weight.
- ▷ Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for tilting and opening the glass sunroof.
- ▷ Distribute the roof load uniformly.
- ▷ The roof load should not extend past the loading area.
- ▷ Always place the heaviest pieces on the bottom.
- ▷ Secure the roof luggage firmly, e.g., using ratchet straps.
- ▷ Do not let objects project into the opening path of the tailgate.
- ▷ Drive cautiously and avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

Saving fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The vehicle contains advanced technologies for the reduction of fuel consumption and emission values.

Fuel consumption depends on a number of different factors.

Carrying out certain measures, such as a moderate driving style and regular maintenance, can influence fuel consumption and the environmental impact.

Remove unnecessary cargo

Additional weight increases fuel consumption.

Remove attached parts following use

Remove roof-mounted luggage racks which are no longer required following use.

Attached parts on the vehicle impair the aerodynamics and increase the fuel consumption.

Close the windows and glass sunroof

Driving with the glass sunroof and windows open results in increased air resistance and thereby reduces the range.

Tires

General information

Tires can affect fuel consumption in various ways, for instance tire size may influence fuel consumption.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly

Check and, if needed, correct the tire inflation pressure at least twice a month and before starting on a long trip.

Low tire inflation pressure increases rolling resistance and thus raises fuel consumption and tire wear.

Drive away immediately

Do not wait for the engine to warm-up while the vehicle remains stationary. Start driving right away, but at moderate engine speeds.

This is the quickest way of warming the cold engine up to operating temperature.

Look well ahead when driving

Driving smoothly and proactively reduces fuel consumption.

Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

By maintaining a suitable distance to the vehicle driving ahead of you.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Avoid high engine speeds

Driving at low engine speeds lowers fuel consumption and reduces wear.

If necessary, observe the vehicle's gear shift indicator, refer to page 106.

Use coasting

When approaching a red light, take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle coast to a halt.

For going downhill take your foot off the accelerator and let the vehicle roll.

The flow of fuel is interrupted while coasting.

Switch off the engine during longer stops

Switching off the engine

Switch off the engine during longer stops, for instance at traffic lights, railroad crossings or in traffic congestion.

Auto Start/Stop function

The Auto Start/Stop function of the vehicle automatically switches off the engine during a stop.

If the engine is switched off and then restarted rather than leaving the engine running constantly, fuel consumption and emissions are reduced. Savings can begin within a few seconds of switching off the engine.

In addition, fuel consumption is also determined by other factors, such as driving style, road conditions, maintenance or environmental factors.

Switch off any functions that are not currently needed

Functions such as seat heating and the rear window defroster require a lot of energy and reduce the range, especially in city and stop-and-go traffic.

Switch off these functions if they are not needed.

Have maintenance carried out

Have the vehicle maintained regularly to achieve optimal vehicle efficiency and service life. BMW recommends that maintenance work be performed by a BMW dealer's service center.

For information on the BMW Maintenance System, refer to page 210.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Mobility

In order to always ensure your mobility, you will find important information on operating fluids, wheels and tires, maintenance and Roadside Assistance in the following.

Refueling

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Follow the fuel recommendation, refer to page 186, prior to refueling.

Safety information

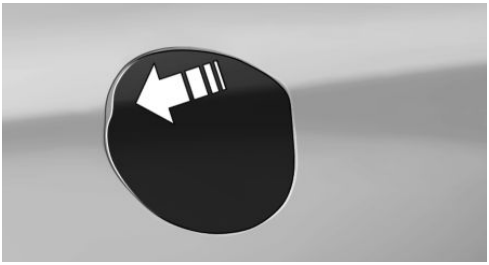
NOTE

With a range of less than 30 miles/50 km it is possible that the engine will no longer have sufficient fuel. Engine functions are not ensured anymore. There is a risk of property damage. Refuel promptly.◀

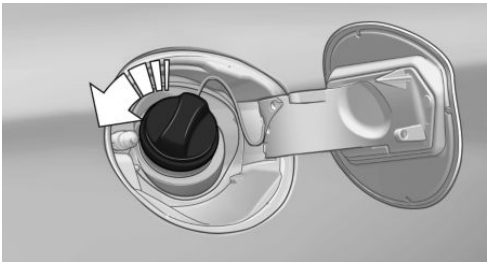
Fuel cap

Opening

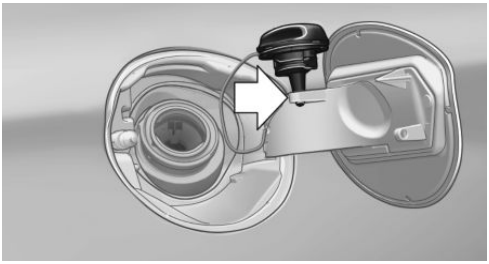
1. Briefly press the rear edge of the fuel filler flap.



2. Turn the fuel cap counterclockwise.



3. Place the fuel cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler flap.



Closing

WARNING

The retaining strap of the fuel cap can be jammed and crushed during closing. The cap cannot be correctly closed. Fuel or fuel vapors can escape. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. Pay attention that the retaining strap is not jammed or crushed when closing the lid.◀

1. Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.
2. Close the fuel filler flap.

Manually unlocking fuel filler flap

E.g., in the event of an electrical malfunction.

Have fuel filler flap unlocked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Observe the following when refueling

General information

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Observe safety regulations posted at the gas station.

Safety information

NOTE

Fuels are toxic and aggressive. Overfilling of the fuel tank can damage the fuel system. Painted surfaces may be damaged by contact with fuel. Escaping fuel can harm the environment. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid overfilling.◀

Fuel

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Fuel recommendation

General information

Depending on the region, many gas stations sell fuel that has been customized to winter or summer conditions. Fuel that is available in winter, e.g., helps make a cold start easier.

Gasoline

General information

For the best fuel efficiency, the gasoline should be sulfur-free or very low in sulfur content.

Fuels that are marked on the gas pump as containing metal must not be used.

Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10 %, i. e., E10, may be used for refueling.

Ethanol should meet the following quality standards:

US: ASTM 4806–xx

CAN: CGSB-3.511–xx

xx: comply with the current standard in each case.

Safety information

NOTE

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Furthermore, the catalytic converter is permanently damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Do not refuel or add the following in the case of gasoline engines:

- ▷ Leaded gasoline.
- ▷ Metallic additives, e.g., manganese or iron.

Do not press the Start/Stop button after refueling with the wrong fuel. Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

NOTE

Incorrect fuels can damage the fuel system and the engine. There is a risk of damage to property. Do not use fuels with a higher percentage of ethanol than recommended. Do not refuel with fuels containing methanol, e.g. M5 to M100.◀

NOTE

Fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality can compromise engine function or cause engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not fill with fuel that does not comply with the minimum quality.◀

CAUTION

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in harmful engine deposits or damage. Additionally, problems relating to drivability, starting and stalling, especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude, may occur.

If drivability problems are encountered, we recommend switching to a high quality gasoline brand and a higher octane grade — AKI number — for a few tank fills. To avoid harmful en-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

gine deposits, it is highly recommended to purchase gasoline from Top Tier retailers.

Failure to comply with these recommendations may result in the need for unscheduled maintenance.◀

Recommended fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 93.

Minimum fuel grade

BMW recommends AKI 91.

If you use gasoline with this minimum AKI Rating, the engine may produce knocking sounds when starting at high external temperatures. This has no effect on the engine life.

BMW M recommends Shell V-Power

Wheels and tires

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Tire inflation pressure

General information

The tire characteristics and tire inflation pressure influence the following:

- ▷ The service life of the tires.
- ▷ Road safety.
- ▷ Driving comfort.
- ▷ Fuel consumption.

Safety information

WARNING

A tire with low or missing tire inflation pressure impacts handling, such as steering and braking response. There is a risk of an accident. Regularly check the tire inflation pressure, and correct it as needed, e.g., twice a month and before a long trip.◂

Checking the tire inflation pressure

General information

Only check the tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold, i.e.:

- ▷ Driving range of max. 1.25 miles/2 km has not been exceeded.
- ▷ If the vehicle has not moved again for at least 2 hours after a trip.

The tire inflation pressure specifications only relate to cold tires or tires at the same temperature as the ambient temperature.

Tires heat up while driving. The tire inflation pressure increases with the tire temperature.

The displays of inflation devices may underread by up to 0.1 bar/2 psi.

Tires have a natural, consistent loss of tire inflation pressure.

Check whether all valve caps are screwed onto the tire valves.

After correcting the tire inflation pressure

For run-flat tires: reinitialize run-flat tires.

For the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM: reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Tire inflation pressure specifications

The tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 189, contains all tire inflation pressure specifications for the specified tire sizes at the ambient temperature. The tire inflation pressure values apply to tire sizes approved by the manufacturer of the vehicle for the vehicle type.

To identify the correct tire inflation pressure, please note the following:

- ▷ Tire sizes of your vehicle.
- ▷ Maximum permitted driving speed.

Tire inflation pressures up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For speeds of up to 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 189, and adjust as necessary.

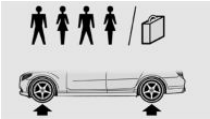
Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

These pressure values can also be found on the tire inflation pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Do not exceed a speed of 100 mph/160 km/h.

Tire inflation pressure values up to 100 mph/160 km/h

M2

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
235/40 R 18 95 V M+S XL Std	2.1 / 30	2.3 / 33
F: 245/35 R 19 93 (Y) XL Std	2.4 / 35	-
R: 265/35 R 19 98 (Y) XL Std	-	2.4 / 35

Tire inflation pressures at max. speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

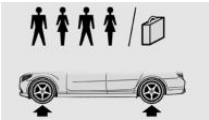
WARNING

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise, tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

For speeds over 100 mph/160 km/h and for optimum driving comfort, note the pressure values in the tire inflation pressure table, refer to page 189, and adjust as necessary.

Tire inflation pressure values over 100 mph/160 km/h

M2

Tire size	Pressure specifications in bar/PSI	
Specifications in bar/PSI with cold tires		
235/40 R 18 95 V M+S XL Std	2.4 / 35	2.7 / 39
F: 245/35 R 19 93 (Y) XL Std	2.7 / 39	-
R: 265/35 R 19 98 (Y) XL Std	-	2.9 / 42

Tire identification marks

Tire size

245/45 R 18 96 Y

245: nominal width in mm

45: aspect ratio in %

R: radial tire code

18: rim diameter in inches

96: load rating, not for ZR tires

Y: speed rating, before the R on ZR tires

Maximum tire load

Maximum tire load is the maximum permissible weight for which the tire is approved.

Locate the maximum tire load on the tire sidewall and the Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR – on the certification label on the driver's door pillar.

Divide the tire load by 1.1. It must be greater than one-half of the vehicle's Gross Axle Weight Rating – GAWR. Note, front vs. rear GAWR and tire loads, respectively.

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

R = up to 106 mph/170 km/h

S = up to 112 mph/180 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Tire Identification Number

DOT code: DOT xxxx xxx 2117

xxxx: manufacturer code for the tire brand

xxx: tire size and tire design

2117: tire age

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

Tire age

Recommendation

Regardless of the tire tread, replace tires at least every 6 years.

Manufacture date

You can find the manufacture date of the tire on the tire's sidewall.

Designation	Manufacture date
DOT … 2117	21st week of 2017

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width.

E.g.: Treadwear 200; Traction AA; Temperature A

DOT Quality Grades

Treadwear

Traction AA A B C

Temperature A B C

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. E.g., a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half, 1 g, times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.

Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades Band A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

M+S

Winter and all-season tires with better cold weather performance than summer tires.

Tire tread

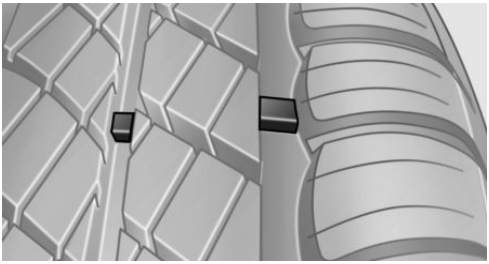
Summer tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.12 in/3 mm, otherwise there is an increased risk of hydroplaning.

Winter tires

Do not drive with a tire tread of less than 0.16 in/4 mm, as such tires are less suitable for winter operation.

Minimum tread depth



Wear indicators are distributed around the tire's circumference and have the legally required minimum height of 0.063 inches/1.6 mm.

The positions of the wear indicators are marked on the tire sidewall with TWI, Tread Wear Indicator.

Tire damage

General information

Inspect your tires regularly for damage, foreign objects lodged in the tread, and tread wear.

Driving over rough or damaged road surfaces, as well as debris, curbs and other obstacles can cause serious damage to wheels, tires and suspension parts. This is more likely to occur with low-profile tires, which provide less cushioning between the wheel and the road. Be careful to avoid road hazards and reduce your speed, especially if your vehicle is equipped with low-profile tires.

Indications of tire damage or other vehicle malfunctions:

- ▷ Unusual vibrations.
- ▷ Unusual tire or running noises.
- ▷ Unusual handling such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

Damage can be caused by the following situations, for instance:

- ▷ Driving over curbs.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

- ▷ Road damage.
- ▷ Tire inflation pressure too low.
- ▷ Vehicle overloading.
- ▷ Incorrect tire storage.

Safety information

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. If tire damage is suspected while driving, immediately reduce speed and stop. Have wheels and tires checked. For this purpose, drive carefully to the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop. Have vehicle towed or transported as needed.◀

WARNING

Damaged tires can lose tire inflation pressure, which can lead to loss of vehicle control. There is a risk of an accident. Do not repair damaged tires, but have them replaced.◀

WARNING

Tires can become damaged by driving over obstacles, e.g., curbs or road damage, at high speed. Larger wheels have a smaller tire cross-section. The smaller the tire cross-section, the higher the risk of tire damage. There is a danger of accidents and property damage. If possible, drive around obstacles, or drive over them slowly and carefully.◀

Changing wheels and tires

Mounting

Have mounting and wheel balancing carried out by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Wheel and tire combination

General information

You can ask the dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop about the correct wheel/tire combination and wheel rim versions for the vehicle.

Incorrect wheel/tire combinations impair the function of a variety of systems such as ABS or DSC.

To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires with a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer.

Following tire damage, have the original wheel/tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Safety information

WARNING

Wheels and tires which are not suitable for your vehicle can damage parts of the vehicle, for instance due to contact with the body due to tolerances despite the same official size rating. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle strongly suggests that you use wheels and tires that have been recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for your vehicle type.◀

Recommended tire brands

For each tire size, the manufacturer of the vehicle recommends certain tire brands. The tire brands can be identified by a star on the tire sidewall.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

New tires

Tire traction is not optimal due to manufacturing circumstances when tires are brand-new; they achieve their full traction potential after a break-in time.

Drive conservatively for the first 200 miles/300 km.

Retreaded tires

The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.

WARNING

Retreaded tires can have different tire casing structures. With advanced age the service life can be limited. There is a risk of an accident. The manufacturer of your vehicle does not recommend the use of retreaded tires.◀

Winter tires

Winter tires are recommended for operating on winter roads.

Although so-called all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they usually do not provide the same level of performance as winter tires.

Maximum speed of winter tires

If the maximum speed of the vehicle is higher than the permissible speed for the winter tires, then attach a label showing the permissible maximum speed in the field of view. The label is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

With winter tires mounted, observe and do not exceed the permissible maximum speed.

Rotating wheels between axles

The manufacturer of your vehicle advises against switching wheels between the front and rear axles. This can impair the handling characteristics.

Rotating the tires between the axes is not permissible on vehicles with different tire sizes or rim sizes on the front and rear axles.

Storing tires

Air pressure

Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry and dark place.

Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease, and solvents.

Do not leave tires in plastic bags.

Remove dirt from wheels or tires.

Repairing a flat tire

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Mobility System

Concept

With the Mobility System, minor tire damage can be sealed temporarily to enable continued

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

travel. To accomplish this, sealant is pumped into the tires, which seals the damage from the inside.

General information

- ▷ Follow the instructions on using the Mobility System found on the compressor and sealant container.
- ▷ Use of the Mobility System may be ineffective if the tire puncture measures approx. 1/8 inches/4 mm or more.
- ▷ Contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop if the tire cannot be made drivable.
- ▷ If possible, do not remove foreign bodies that have penetrated the tire. Only remove foreign objects if they are visibly protruding from the tire.
- ▷ Pull the speed limit sticker off the sealant container and apply it to the steering wheel.
- ▷ The use of a sealant can damage the TPM wheel electronics. In this case, have the TPM wheel electronics replaced at the next opportunity.
- ▷ The compressor can be used to check the tire inflation pressure.

Storage

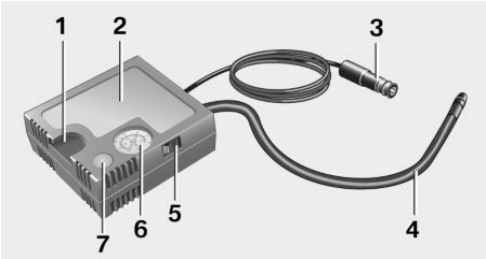
The Mobility System is located under the cargo floor panel.

Sealant container

- ▷ Sealant container, arrow 1.
- ▷ Filling hose, arrow 2.

Observe use-by date on the sealant container.

Compressor



1 Sealant container holder
2 Compressor
3 Connector/cable for socket
4 Connection hose
5 On/off switch
6 Tire pressure gage
7 Reduce tire inflation pressure button

Safety measures

- ▷ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground.
- ▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.
- ▷ Secure the vehicle against rolling away by setting the parking brake.
- ▷ Turn the steering wheel until the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position and engage the steering wheel lock.
- ▷ Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
- ▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle at an appropriate distance.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Filling the tire with sealant

Safety information

DANGER

If the exhaust pipe is blocked or ventilation is insufficient, harmful exhaust gases can enter into the vehicle. The exhaust gases contain pollutants which are colorless and odorless. In enclosed areas, exhaust gases can also accumulate outside of the vehicle. There is danger to life. Keep the exhaust pipe free and ensure sufficient ventilation.◀

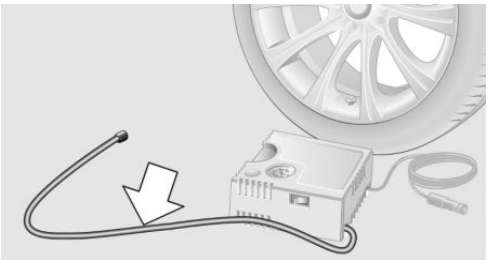
NOTE

The compressor can overheat during extended operation. There is a risk of property damage. Do not run the compressor for more than 10 min.◀

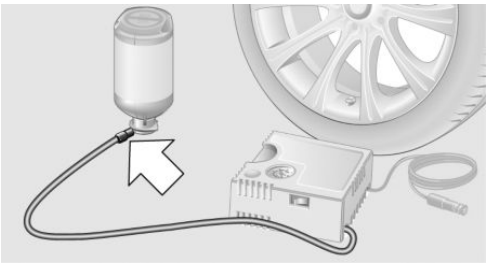
Filling

1. Shake the sealant container.

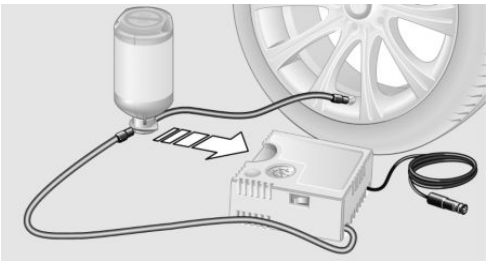
2. Pull the connection hose fully out of the compressor housing. Do not kink the hose.



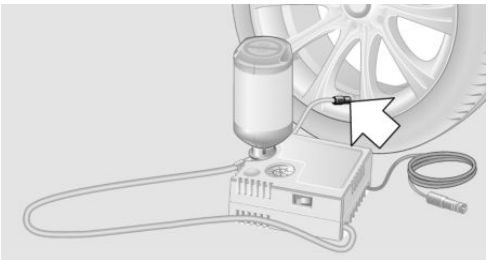
3. Screw the connection hose onto the connector of the sealant container.



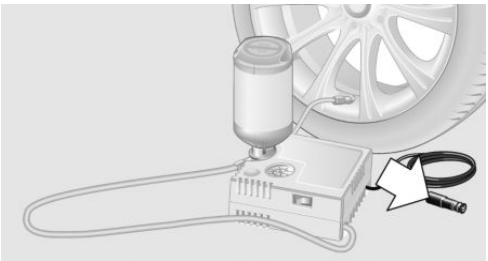
4. Insert the sealant container on the compressor housing in an upright position.



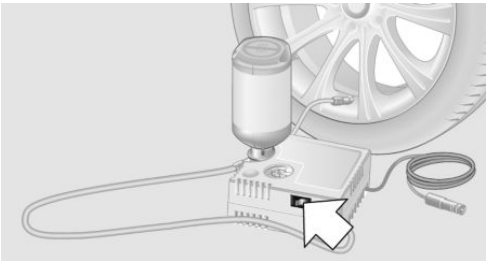
5. Remove the valve cap from the tire valve and screw the filling hose of the sealant container onto the tire valve of the non-working wheel.



6. With the compressor switched off, insert the plug into the power socket inside the vehicle.



7. With the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.



Let the compressor run for max. 10 minutes to fill the tire with sealant and achieve a tire inflation pressure of approx. 2.5 bar.

While the tire is being filled with sealant, the tire inflation pressure may sporadically reach approx. 5 bar. Do not switch off the compressor at this point.

If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar is not reached:

1. Switch off the compressor.
2. Pull the connector out of the power socket inside the vehicle.
3. Unscrew the filling hose from the tire valve.
4. Drive 33 ft/10 m forward and back to distribute the sealant in the tire.
5. Inflate the tire again using the compressor.

   If a tire inflation pressure of 2 bar cannot be reached, contact your dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Stowing the Mobility System

1. Unscrew the filling hose of the sealant container from the tire valve.
2. Pull the compressor connector out of the socket inside the vehicle.
3. Unscrew the connection hose of the compressor from the sealant container.
4. Connect the filling hose of the sealant container previously connected to the tire valve with the available connector on the sealant container.

   This prevents leftover sealant escaping from the sealant container.
5. Wrap and store the sealant container in suitable material to avoid dirtying the cargo area.
6. Stow the Mobility System back in the cargo area.

Distributing the sealant

Immediately drive approx. 5 miles/10 km to ensure that the sealant is evenly distributed in the tire.

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

If possible, do not drive at speeds less than 12 mph/20 km/h.

Correcting the tire inflation pressure

1. Stop at a suitable location.
2. Screw the connection hose of the compressor directly onto the tire valve stem.
3. Insert the connector into the power socket inside the vehicle.
4. Correct the tire inflation pressure to 2.5 bar.

   ▷ Increase tire inflation pressure: with the ignition switched on or the engine running, switch on the compressor.

▷ Reduce tire inflation pressure: press the button on the compressor.

Continuing the trip

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph/80 km/h.

Reinitialize the run-flat tires.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.

Replace the nonworking tire and the sealant container of the Mobility System at the next opportunity.

Snow chains

Fine-link snow chains

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends use of fine-link snow chains. Certain types of fine-link snow chains have been tested by the manufacturer of the vehicle and recommended as road-safe and suitable.

Information regarding suitable snow chains is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Use

Use only in pairs on the rear wheels, equipped with the tires of the following size:

▷ 235/40 R 18.

Follow the snow chain manufacturer's instructions.

Do not initialize the run-flat tires after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

Do not reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM after mounting snow chains, as doing so may result in incorrect readings.

When driving with snow chains, if needed, briefly activate M Dynamic Mode.

Maximum speed with snow chains

Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h when using snow chains.

Changing wheels/tires

General information

When a flat tire kit is used, an immediate wheel change when there is a loss of tire inflation pressure in the event of a flat tire is not always necessary.

If needed, the tools for changing wheels are available as accessories from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

DANGER

The vehicle jack is only provided for short-term lifting of the vehicle for wheel changes. Even if all safety measures are observed, there is a risk of the raised vehicle falling, if the vehicle jack tilts over. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. If the vehicle is raised, do not lie under the vehicle and do not start the engine.◀

WARNING

The vehicle jack is provided by the vehicle manufacturer for changing wheels in the event of a flat tire. The vehicle jack is not designed for frequent use, for instance for changing from summer to winter tires. Using the vehicle jack frequently may cause it to jam or become damaged. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. Only use the vehicle jack to change an emergency wheel or a spare tire in the event of a flat tire.◀

WARNING

On soft, uneven or slippery ground, for example snow, ice, tiles, etc., the vehicle jack can slip away. There is a risk of injury. If possible, change the wheel on a flat, solid, and slip-resistant surface.◀

WARNING

The vehicle jack is optimized for lifting the vehicle and for the jacking points on the vehicle only. There is a risk of injury. Do not lift any other vehicle or cargo using the vehicle jack.◄

WARNING

If the vehicle jack is not inserted into the jacking point provided for this purpose, the vehicle may be damaged or the vehicle jack may slip when it is being cranked up. There is a risk of injury or risk of damage to property. When cranking up the vehicle jack, ensure that it is inserted in the jacking point next to the wheel housing.◄

WARNING

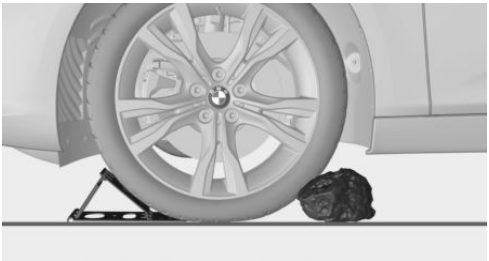
A vehicle that is raised on a vehicle jack may fall off of the jack if lateral forces are exerted on it. There is a risk of injury and risk of damage to property. While the vehicle is raised, do not exert lateral forces on the vehicle or pull abruptly on the vehicle. Have a stuck wheel removed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◄

Securing the vehicle against rolling

General information

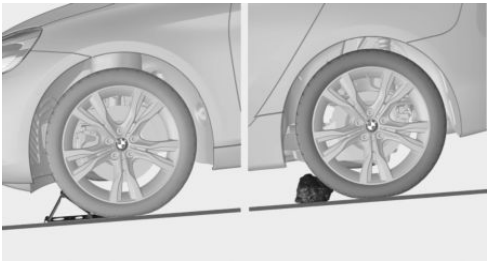
The vehicle manufacturer recommends to additionally secure the vehicle against rolling away when changing a wheel.

On a level surface



Place chocks or other suitable objects, for example a rock, in front of and behind the wheel that is diagonally opposite to the wheel that you wish to change.

On a slight downhill gradient



If you need to change a wheel on a slight downhill grade, place chocks and other suitable objects, for instance a rock, under the wheels of both the front and rear axles against the rolling direction.

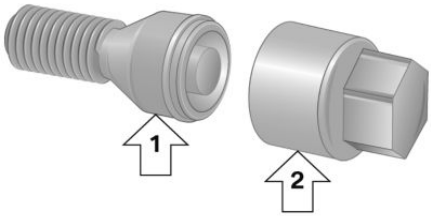
Lug bolt lock

Concept

The wheel lug bolts have a special coding. The lug bolts can only be released with the adapter which matches the coding.

Overview

The adapter of the lug bolt lock is in the onboard vehicle tool kit or in a storage compartment close to the onboard vehicle tool kit.



▷ Lug bolt, arrow 1.

▷ Adapter, arrow 2.

Unscrewing

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt.
2. Unscrew the lug bolt.
3. Remove the adapter after unscrewing the lug bolt.

Screwing on

1. Attach the adapter to the lug bolt. If necessary, turn the adapter until it fits on the lug bolt.
2. Screw on the lug bolt. The tightening torque is 140 Nm.
3. Remove the adapter and stow it after screwing on the lug bolt.

Preparing the vehicle

▷ Park the vehicle on solid and non-slip ground at a safe distance from traffic.

▷ Switch on the hazard warning system.

▷ Set the parking brake.

▷ Engage a gear or move the selector lever to position P.

▷ As soon as permitted by the traffic flow, have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.

▷ Depending on the equipment version, get tools and the emergency wheel from the vehicle.

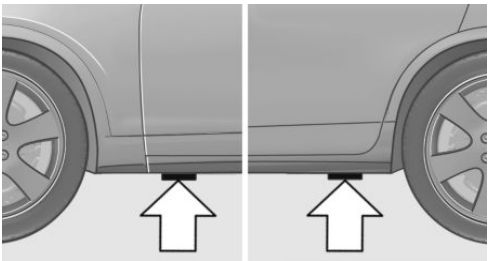
▷ If necessary, set up a warning triangle or portable hazard warning light at an appropriate distance.

▷ Do not place wood blocks or similar items under the vehicle jack; otherwise, it cannot reach its carrying capacity because of the restricted height.

▷ Secure the vehicle additionally against rolling.

▷ Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

Jacking points for the vehicle jack



The jacking points for the vehicle jack are located at the indicated positions.

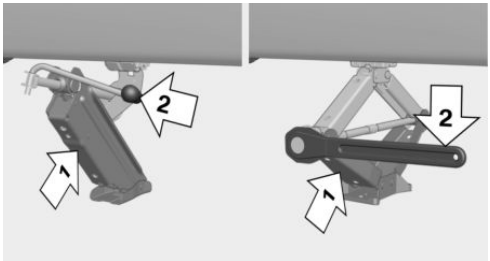
Jacking up the vehicle

WARNING

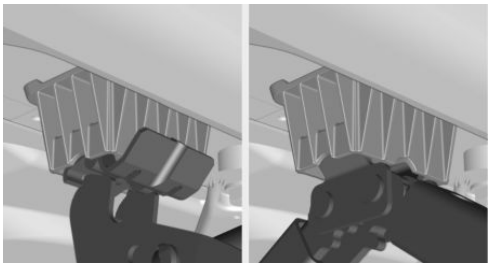
Hands and fingers can be jammed when using the vehicle jack. There is a risk of injury. Comply with the described hand position and

do not change this position while using the vehicle jack.◀

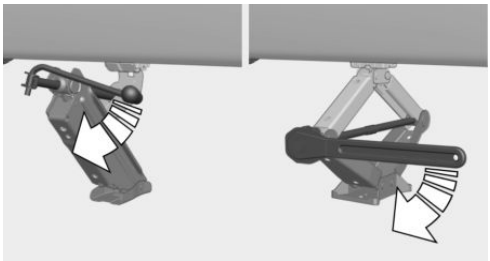
1. Hold the vehicle jack with one hand, arrow 1, and grasp the vehicle jack crank with your other hand, arrow 2.



2. Insert the vehicle jack into the rectangular recess of the jacking point closest to the wheel to be changed.

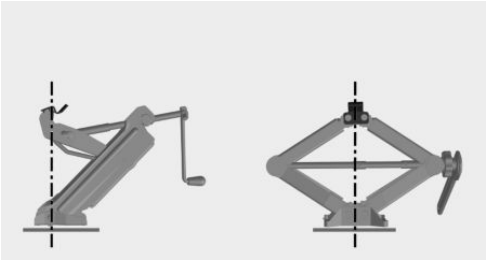


3. Extend the vehicle jack by turning the vehicle jack crank or lever clockwise.

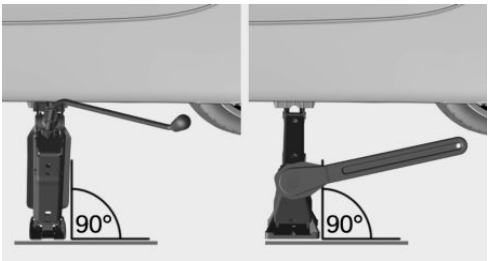


4. Take your hand away from the vehicle jack as soon as the vehicle jack is under load and continue turning the vehicle jack crank or lever with one hand.

5. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot is extended vertically.



6. Make sure that the vehicle jack foot stands vertically and perpendicularly beneath the jacking point after extending the vehicle jack.



7. Crank up the vehicle jack until the entire surface of the jack is in contact with the ground and the wheel in question is raised a maximum of 1.2 inches/3 cm off the ground.

Mounting a wheel

Mount one emergency wheel only, as required.

1. Unscrew the lug bolts.
2. Remove the wheel.
3. Put the new wheel or emergency wheel on and screw in at least two lug bolts in a crosswise pattern until hand-tight.

   If non-original light-alloy wheels of the vehicle manufacturer are mounted, the accompanying lug bolts may have to be used as well.

4. Hand-tighten the remaining lug bolts and tighten all lug bolts well in a crosswise pattern.
5. Turn the vehicle jack crank counterclockwise to retract the vehicle jack and lower the vehicle.
6. Remove the vehicle jack and stow it securely.

After the wheel change

1. Tighten the lug bolts crosswise. The tightening torque is 101 lb ft/140 Nm.
2. Stow the nonworking wheel in the cargo area, if necessary.

   The nonworking wheel cannot be stored under the cargo floor panel because of its size.
3. Check tire inflation pressure at the next opportunity and correct as needed.
4. Reinitialize the run-flat tires.

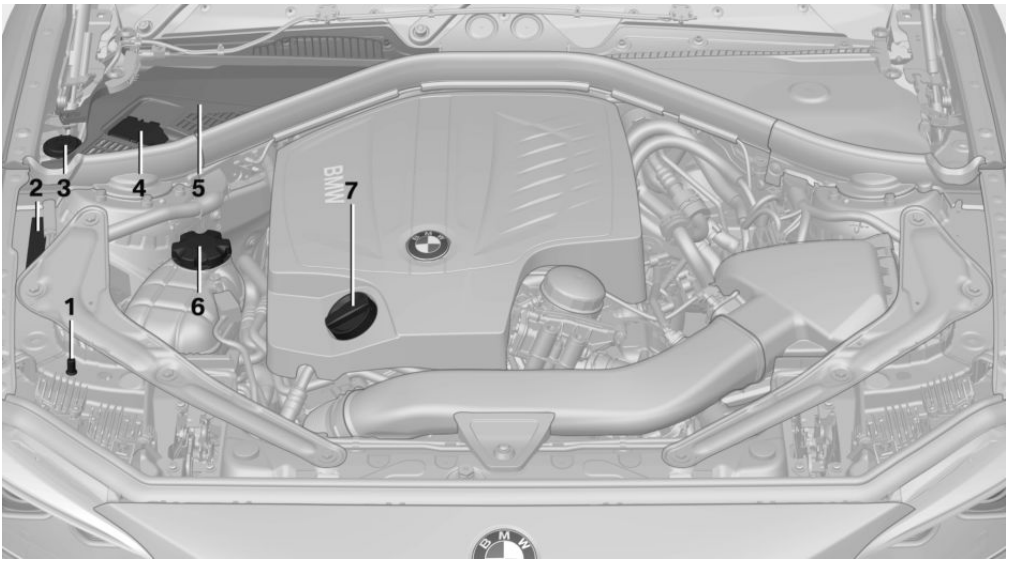
   Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor TPM.
5. Check to make sure the lug bolts are tight with a calibrated torque wrench.
6. Have the damaged tire replaced at the nearest dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine compartment

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Important features in the engine compartment



1 Jump-starting, negative battery terminal
2 Vehicle identification number
3 Filler neck for washer fluid
4 Jump-starting, positive battery terminal
5 Engine compartment fuse box
6 Coolant reservoir
7 Oil filler neck

Hood

Safety information

WARNING

Improperly executed work in the engine compartment can damage vehicle components and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that, in the effort to avoid such risks, work in the engine compartment be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◄

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

WARNING

The engine compartment accommodates moving components. Certain components in the engine compartment can also move with the vehicle switched off, for instance the radiator fan. There is a risk of injury. Do not reach into the area of moving parts. Keep articles of clothing and hair away from moving parts.◀

WARNING

There are protruding parts, for instance locking hook, on the inside of the hood. There is a risk of injury. If the hood is open, pay attention to protruding parts and keep clear of these areas.◀

WARNING

An incorrectly locked hood can open while driving and restrict visibility. There is a risk of an accident. Stop immediately and correctly close the hood.◀

WARNING

Body parts can be jammed when opening and closing the hood. There is a risk of injury. Make sure that the area of movement of the hood is clear during opening and closing.◀

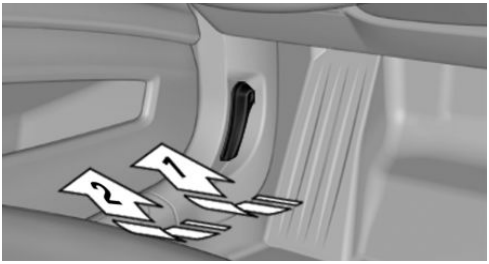
NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◀

Opening the hood

1. Pull lever, arrow 1.

   Hood is unlocked.



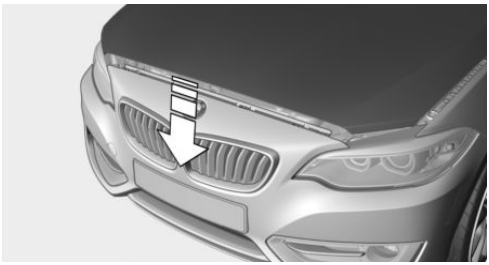
2. After the lever is released, pull the lever again, arrow 2.

   Hood can be opened.

Indicator/warning lights

When the hood is unlocked, a Check Control message is displayed.

Closing the hood



Let the hood drop from a height of approx. 16 inches/40 cm and push down on it to lock it fully.

The hood must engage on both sides.

Engine oil

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The engine oil consumption is dependent on your driving style and driving conditions.

Therefore, regularly check the engine oil level after refueling by taking a detailed measurement.

The engine oil consumption can increase in the following situations, for example:

- ▷ Sporty driving style.
- ▷ Break-in of the engine.
- ▷ Idling of the engine.
- ▷ With use of engine oil types that are classified as not suitable.

Different Check Control messages appear on the Control Display depending on the engine oil level.

Safety information

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◂

NOTE

Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◂

Electronic oil measurement

General information

The electronic oil measurement has two measuring principles:

- ▷ Monitoring.
- ▷ Detailed measurement.

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, for instance when taking curves aggressively, regularly perform a detailed measurement.

Monitoring

Concept

The engine oil level is monitored electronically while driving and can be shown on the Control Display.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

Functional requirements

A current measured value is available after approx. 30 minutes of normal driving.

Displaying the engine oil level

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"

The engine oil level is displayed.

System limits

When making frequent short-distance trips or using a dynamic driving style, it may not be possible to calculate a measured value. In this case, the measured value for the last, sufficiently long trip is displayed.

Detailed measurement

Concept

The engine oil level is checked when the vehicle is stationary and displayed via a scale.

If the engine oil level is outside its permissible operating range, a Check Control message is displayed.

General information

During the measurement, the idle speed is increased somewhat.

Functional requirements

- ▷ Vehicle is parked in a horizontal position.
- ▷ Manual transmission: shift lever in neutral position, clutch and accelerator pedals not depressed.
- ▷ M Double clutch transmission: selector lever in selector lever position N and accelerator pedal not depressed.
- ▷ Engine is running and is at operating temperature.

Performing a detailed measurement

Using iDrive:

1. "My Vehicle"
2. "Vehicle status"
3. "Engine oil level"
4. "Measure engine oil level"
5. "Start measurement"

The engine oil level is checked and displayed via a scale.

Adding engine oil

General information

Only add engine oil when the message is displayed in the instrument cluster. The quantity to be added is indicated in the message displayed in the instrument cluster.

Only add suitable types of engine oil, refer to page 206.

Safely park the vehicle and switch off the ignition before adding engine oil.

Take care not to add too much engine oil.

Safety information

WARNING

Operating materials, e.g., oils, greases, coolants, fuels, can contain harmful ingredients. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Observe the instructions on the containers. Avoid the contact of articles of clothing, skin or eyes with operating materials. Do not refill operating materials into different bottles. Store operating materials out of reach of children.◀

NOTE

An engine oil level that is too low causes engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Immediately add engine oil.◀

NOTE

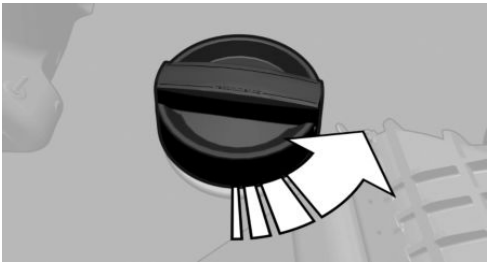
Too much engine oil can damage the engine or the catalytic converter. There is a risk of property damage. Do not add too much engine oil. When too much engine oil is added, have oil level corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.◀

Overview

The oil filler neck is located in the engine compartment, refer to page 202.

Adding engine oil

1. Open the hood, refer to page 202.
2. Turn the lid counterclockwise.



3. Add engine oil.

Engine oil types to add

General information

The engine oil quality is critical for the life of the engine.

Safety information

NOTE

Oil additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of property damage. Do not use oil additives.◄

NOTE

Incorrect engine oil can cause malfunctions in the engine or damage it. There is a risk of property damage. When selecting an engine oil, make sure that the engine oil has the correct oil rating.◄

Suitable engine oil types

You can add engine oils that meet the following oil rating standards:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01 FE.

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Alternative engine oil types

If an engine oil suitable for continuous use is not available, up to 1 US quart/liter of an engine oil with the following oil rating can be added:

Gasoline engine
BMW Longlife-01.
API SL, API SM, or API SN.

Viscosity grades

More information about suitable engine oil ratings and viscosities of engine oils can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Engine oil change

NOTE

Engine oil that is not changed in timely fashion can cause increased engine wear and thus engine damage. There is a risk of property damage. Do not exceed the service data indicated in the vehicle.◄

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop change the engine oil.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

BMW recommends
Original BMW Engine Oil.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Coolant

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

Not all commercially available additives are suitable for the vehicle. Information about suitable additives is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

With the engine hot and the cooling system open, coolant can escape and lead to scalding. There is a risk of injury. Only open the cooling system with the engine cooled down.◄

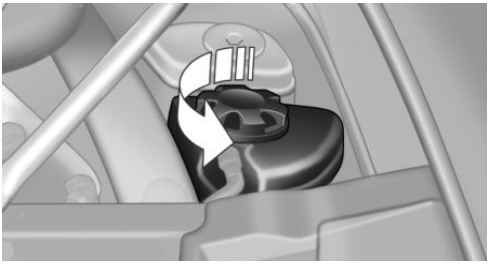
WARNING

Additives are harmful and incorrect additives can damage the engine. There is a risk of injury and risk of property damage. Do not allow additives to come into contact with skin, eyes or articles of clothing. Use suitable additives only.◄

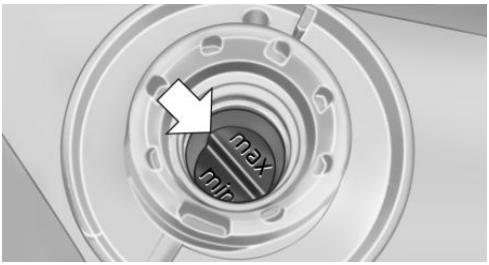
Coolant level

Checking

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.

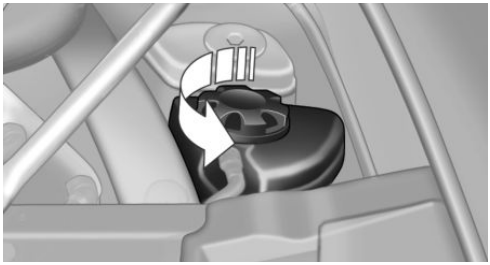


3. Open the coolant reservoir lid.
4. The coolant level is correct if it lies between the minimum and maximum marks in the filler neck.



Adding

1. Let the engine cool.
2. Turn the lid of the coolant reservoir slightly counterclockwise to allow any excess pressure to dissipate, then open it.



3. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level; do not overfill.
4. Turn the lid until there is an audible click. The arrows on the coolant reservoir and the lid must point towards one another.
5. Have the cause of the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Disposal

Comply with the relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant and coolant additives.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Maintenance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

BMW maintenance system

The maintenance system indicates required maintenance measures, and thereby provides support in maintaining road safety and the operational reliability of the vehicle.

In some cases, scopes and intervals may vary according to the country-specific version. Replacement work, spare parts, fuels and lubricants, and wear materials are calculated separately. Further information is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Condition Based Service CBS

Concept

Sensors and special algorithms take into account the driving conditions of the vehicle. CBS uses these to calculate the need for maintenance.

The system makes it possible to adapt the amount of maintenance corresponding to your user profile.

General information

Information on service requirements, refer to page 105, can be displayed on the Control Display.

Service data in the remote control

Information on the required maintenance is continuously stored in the remote control. The dealer's service center can read this data out and suggest a maintenance scope for the vehicle.

Therefore, hand the service advisor the remote control with which the vehicle was driven most recently.

Storage periods

Storage periods during which the vehicle battery was disconnected are not taken into account.

If this occurs, have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop update the time-dependent maintenance procedures, such as checking brake fluid and, if necessary, changing the engine oil and the microfilter/activated-charcoal filter.

Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that maintenance and repair be performed by a dealer's service center or another qualified

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

service center or repair shop. Records of regular maintenance and repair work should be retained.

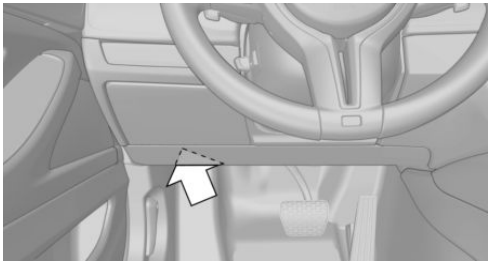
Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnosis

Safety information

NOTE

The socket for Onboard Diagnosis is an intricate component intended to be used in conjunction with specialized equipment to check the vehicle's primary emissions system. Improper use of the socket for Onboard Diagnosis, or contact with the socket for Onboard Diagnosis for other than its intended purpose, can cause vehicle malfunctions and creates risks of personal and property damage. Given the foregoing, the manufacture of your vehicle strongly recommends that access to the socket for Onboard Diagnosis be limited to a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or other persons that have the specialized training and equipment for purposes of properly utilizing the socket for Onboard Diagnosis.◀

Position



There is an OBD socket on the driver's side for checking the primary components in the vehicle's emissions.

Emissions

▷ The warning lamp lights up:

Emissions are deteriorating. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

▷ The warning lamp flashes under certain circumstances:

This indicates that there is excessive misfiring in the engine.

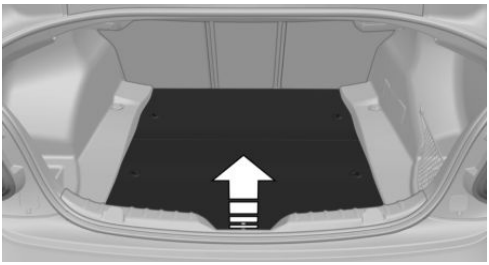
Reduce the vehicle speed and have the system checked immediately; otherwise, serious engine misfiring within a brief period can seriously damage emission control components, in particular the catalytic converter.

Replacing components

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Onboard vehicle tool kit



The onboard vehicle tool kit is located under the cargo floor panel.

Wiper blade replacement

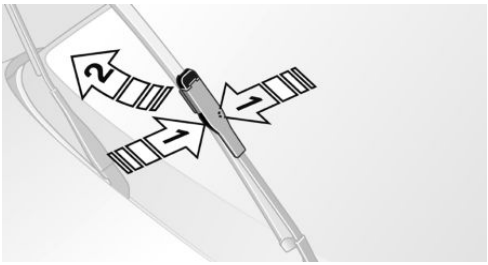
Safety information

NOTE

If the wiper arm falls onto the windshield without the wiper blades installed, the windshield can be damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Secure the wiper arm when replacing the wiper blades and do not fold down the wipers without the wiper blades installed.◂

Replacing the wiper blades

1. To change the wiper blades, fold up the wiper arms, refer to page 92.
2. Fold up and hold the wiper arm firmly.
3. Squeeze the retainer spring, arrow 1, and fold up the wiper blade, arrow 2.



4. Remove the wiper blade forward from the catch.
5. Insert the new wiper blade in reverse order of removal until it locks in place.
6. Fold down the wipers.

NOTE

Folded-away wipers can be jammed when the hood is opened. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that the wipers with the wiper blades mounted are folded down onto the windshield before opening the hood.◂

Light and bulb replacement

General information

Lights and bulbs

Lights and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety.

The vehicle manufacturer recommends that you have the relevant work carried out a deal-

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

er's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

A spare light box is available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 213.

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

Some items of equipment use light-emitting diodes installed behind a cover as a light source. These light-emitting diodes, which are related to conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

Observe the safety information, refer to page 213.

Safety information

Lights and bulbs

WARNING

Bulbs can get hot during operation. Contact with the bulbs can cause burns. There is a risk of injury. Only change bulbs after they have cooled off.◀

WARNING

Work on switched-on lighting systems can cause short circuits. There is a risk of injury or risk of property damage. When working on the lighting system, switch off the lamps in question. If necessary, heed the bulb manufacturer's instructions.◀

NOTE

Dirty bulbs have a reduced service life. There is a risk of property damage. Do not hold new bulbs with your bare hands. Use a clean cloth or something similar, or hold the bulb by its base.◀

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

WARNING

Too intensive brightness can irritate or damage the retina of the eye. There is a risk of injury. Do not look directly into the headlights or other light sources. Do not remove the LED covers.◀

Headlight glass

Condensation can form on the inside of the external lights in cool or humid weather. When driving with the lights switched on, the condensation evaporates after a short time. The headlight glass does not need to be changed.

If despite driving with the headlights switched on, increasing humidity forms, for instance water droplets in the light, have the headlights checked.

Front lights, bulb replacement

LED headlights

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs)

All front lamps and side turn signals are designed with LED technology.

In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

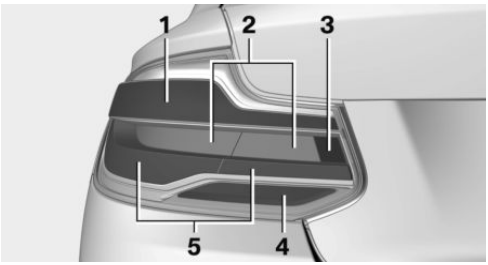
Turn signal in exterior mirror

The turn signals in the exterior mirrors feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Tail lamps, bulb replacement

Overview



1 Turn signal
2 Outer brake lights
3 Inside brake light
4 Reversing light
5 Rear light

Bulb replacement

General information

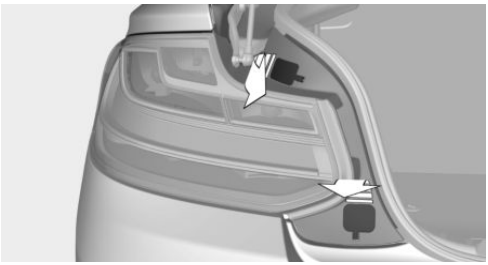
Follow the safety information, refer to page 213.

Reversing light: 21-watt bulb, W21W.

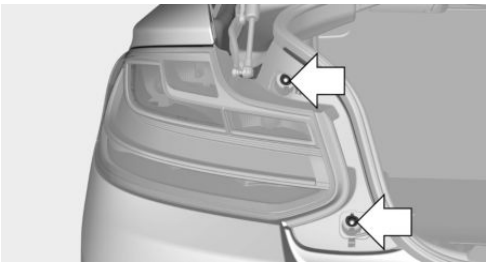
The turn signals, brake lights, and rear lights feature LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Removing the tail lamp

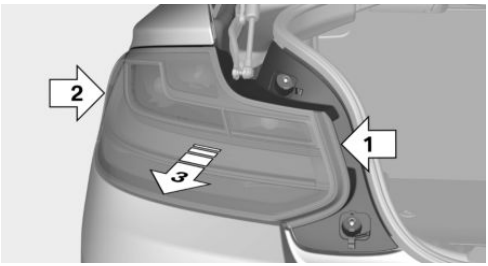
1. Open tailgate.
2. Open the two covers on the tail lamp.



3. With the handle of the screwdriver from the onboard vehicle tool kit, loosen and remove the nuts on the two fasteners. Make sure that the nuts do not drop into the bumper area. In addition to the two outer fasteners, there is another inner fastener.



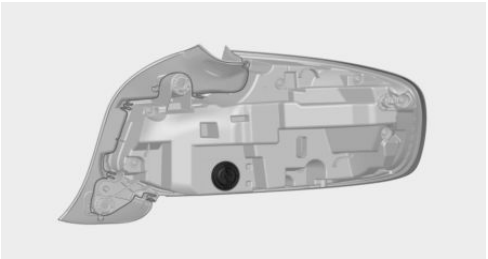
4. Hold the grip rail in one hand, arrow 1, and brace against the outside with your other hand, arrow 2. Carefully pry out the tail lamp, arrow 3, until the rubber mount releases from the inner fastener.



5. Remove the plug from the bulb holder.

Replacing the bulbs

1. Turn the cover in the direction indicated on the housing and remove it.

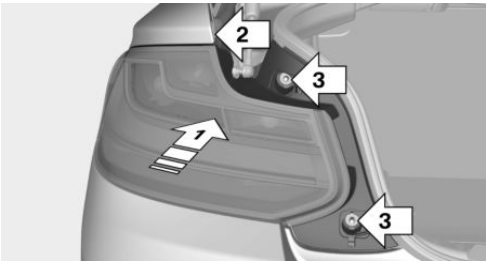


Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

2. Press the nonworking bulb gently into the socket, turn counterclockwise and remove.
3. Install the new bulb and cover in reverse order of removal.

Installing the tail lamp

1. Connect the plug to the bulb holder.
2. Insert the tail lamp straight in and press it in, arrow 1, until the rubber mount latches in the inner fastener. Make sure when inserting the tail lamp that the rubber lip, arrow 2, on the top side of the tail lamp does not fold over. Screw on the two nuts, arrow 3, and close covers.



Central brake lamp and license plate lamp

Observe the safety information, refer to page 213.

These lights are made using LED technology. In the case of a malfunction, contact a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Vehicle battery

Maintenance

The battery is maintenance-free.

The added amount of acid is sufficient for the service life of the battery.

More information about the battery can be requested from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Replacing the vehicle battery

General information

The manufacturer of your vehicle recommends that you have a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop register the vehicle battery to the vehicle after the battery has been replaced. Once the battery has been registered again, all comfort features will be available without restriction and any Check Control messages displayed which relate to comfort features will disappear.

Safety information

NOTE

Vehicle batteries that are not compatible can damage vehicle systems and impair vehicle functions. There is a risk of personal and property damage. Only vehicle batteries that are compatible with your vehicle type should be installed in your vehicle. Information on compatible vehicle batteries is available at your dealer's service center.◀

Charging the battery

General information

Make sure that the battery is always sufficiently charged to guarantee that the battery remains usable for its full service life.

A discharged battery is indicated by a red indicator light.

The battery may need to be charged in the following cases:

- ▷ When making frequent short-distance drives.
- ▷ If the vehicle is not used for more than a month.

Safety information

NOTE

Battery chargers for the vehicle battery can work with high voltages and currents, which means that the 12 volt on-board network can be overloaded or damaged. There is a risk of property damage. Only connect battery chargers for the vehicle battery to the starting aid terminals in the engine compartment.◀

Starting aid terminals

In the vehicle, only charge the battery via the starting aid terminals, refer to page 221, in the engine compartment with the engine off.

Power failure

After a power loss, some equipment needs to be newly initialized or individual settings updated, for example:

- ▷ Seat and mirror memory: store the positions again.
- ▷ Time: update.
- ▷ Date: update.
- ▷ Glass sunroof and sliding visor: initialize the system.

Disposing of old batteries

Have old batteries disposed of by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop or take them to a collection point.

Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Secure the battery so that it does not tip over during transport.

Fuses

Safety information

WARNING

Incorrect and repaired fuses can overload electrical lines and components. There is a risk of fire. Never attempt to repair a blown fuse. Do not replace a nonworking fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating.◀

Replacing a fuse

The fuses are located in two different places in the vehicle.

Plastic tweezers and information on the fuse types and locations are stored in the fuse box in the cargo area.

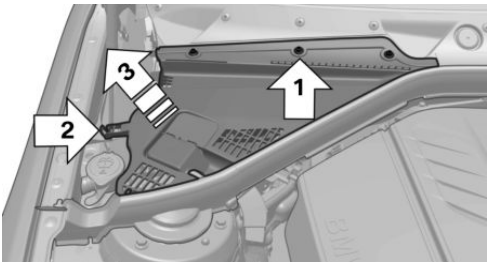
In the engine compartment

General information

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuses are located on the opposite side of the engine compartment.

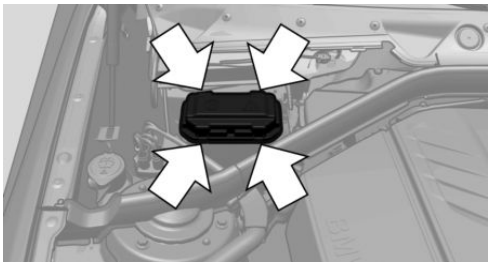
Removing the cover

1. Use the onboard vehicle tool kit to loosen the three cover screws, arrow 1.



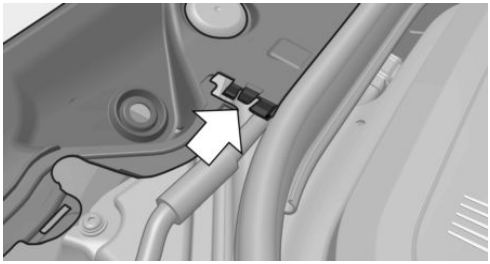
2. Squeeze and raise the holder, arrow 2.

3. Remove the cover from one side, arrow 3.
4. Press the four fasteners and remove the cover.



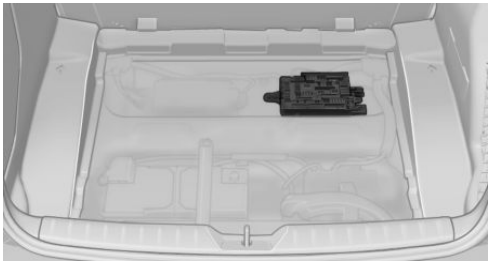
Attaching the covers

1. When attaching the cover, make sure that all four fasteners are engaged.
2. Attach the cover under the rubber lip and then thread it between the bars.

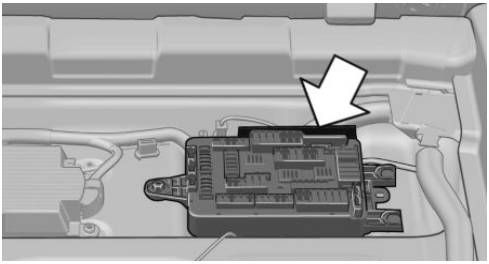


3. Press down on the holder and tighten the three screws.

In the cargo area



Fold up the cargo floor panel.



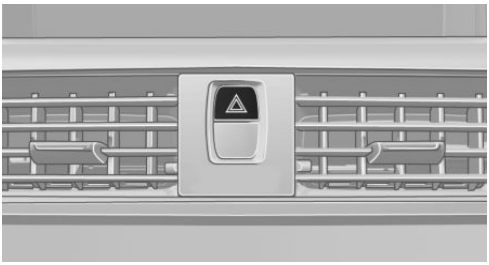
Information on the fuse types and locations is found on a separate sheet.

Breakdown assistance

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Hazard warning flashers



The button is located in the center console.

The red light in the button flashes when the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Intelligent emergency call

Concept

In case of an emergency, an Emergency Request can be made through the system.

General information

Only press the SOS button in an emergency.

For technical reasons, the Emergency Request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

Overview

SOS button in the roofliner

Functional requirements

- ▷ The SIM card integrated in the vehicle has been activated.
- ▷ The radio-ready state is switched on.
- ▷ The Assist system is functional.

Initiating an Emergency Request automatically

Under certain conditions, for instance if the airbags trigger, an Emergency Request is automatically initiated immediately after an accident of corresponding severity. Automatic Collision Notification is not affected by pressing the SOS button.

Initiating an Emergency Request manually

1. Press the cover briefly to open it.
2. Press the SOS button until the LED at the button lights up green.

▷ The LED is illuminated green when an Emergency Request has been initiated.

If a cancel prompt appears on the Control Display, the Emergency Request can be aborted.

If the situation allows, wait in your vehicle until the voice connection has been established.

▷ The LED flashes green when a connection to the BMW Response Center has been established.

The BMW Response Center then makes contact with you and takes further steps to help you.

Even if you are unable to respond, the BMW Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain circumstances.

For this, data is transmitted to the BMW Response Center which serves to determine the necessary rescue measures. E.g., the current position of the vehicle, if it can be established.

Even if you can no longer hear the BMW Response Center through the loudspeakers, the BMW Response Center may still be able to hear you.

The BMW Response Center ends the Emergency Request.

Roadside Assistance

General information

Roadside Assistance can be reached around the clock in many countries. You can obtain assistance there in the event of a vehicle breakdown.

Roadside Assistance

Concept

BMW Roadside Assistance can be contacted if assistance is needed in the event of a breakdown.

General information

In the event of a breakdown, data on the vehicle's condition are sent directly to Roadside Assistance.

Roadside Assistance can also be contacted via a Check Control message, refer to page 103.

Requirements

▷ Active ConnectedDrive contract, equipment version with Intelligent emergency call or BMW ConnectedDrive services.

▷ Cellular network reception.

▷ Ignition or standby state is switched on.

Starting Roadside Assistance

If the vehicle is equipped with Teleservices, support is offered through Teleservice Diagnosis.

Using iDrive:

1. "ConnectedDrive"
2. "BMW Assist"
3. "BMW Roadside Assistance"

   A voice connection is established.

Teleservice Diagnosis

Teleservice Diagnosis enables the wireless transmission of detailed vehicle data that is important for vehicle diagnosis. This data is transmitted automatically.

A voice connection is established to Roadside Assistance.

Starting Teleservice Help

Teleservice Help enables an in-depth diagnosis of the vehicle by Roadside Assistance via wireless transmission.

You can launch Teleservice Help by requesting it through Roadside Assistance.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Set the parking brake.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

3. Control Display is switched on.
4. "Teleservice Help"

The driving ability of the vehicle can be restored for specific functions.

If this is not possible, further measures will be initiated, for instance Roadside Assistance will be informed.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located on the inside of the tailgate.

To remove, loosen the bracket.

First-aid kit

General information

Some of the articles have a limited service life.

Check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace any expired items promptly.

Storage

The first-aid kit is located in the cargo area in the storage compartment.

Jump-starting

General information

If the battery is discharged, the engine can be started using the battery of another vehicle and two jumper cables. Only use jumper cables with fully insulated clamp handles.

Safety information

DANGER

Contact with live components can lead to an electric shock. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Do not touch any components that are under voltage.◄

WARNING

If the jumper cables are connected in the incorrect order, sparking may occur. There is a risk of injury. Pay attention to the correct order during connection.◄

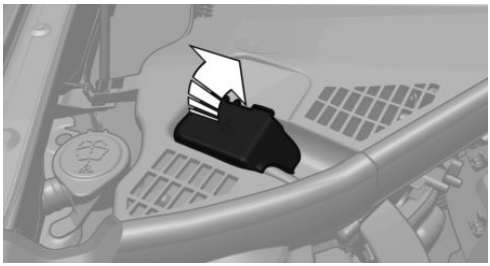
NOTE

In the case of body contact between the two vehicles, a short circuit can occur during jump-starting. There is a risk of property damage. Make sure that no body contact occurs.◄

Preparation

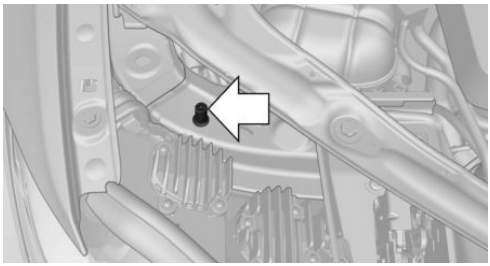
1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 volts. The voltage information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electronic systems/power consumers in both vehicles.

Starting aid terminals



The starting aid terminal in the engine compartment acts as the battery's positive terminal.

Open the cover of the starting aid terminal.



The body ground or a special nut acts as the battery negative terminal.

Connecting the cables

To prevent personal injury or damage to both vehicles, adhere strictly to the following procedure.

1. Pull off the lid of the BMW starting aid terminal.
2. Attach one terminal clamp of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the terminal clamp on the other end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding starting aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.
4. Attach one terminal clamp of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of assisting vehicle.
5. Attach the second terminal clamp to the negative terminal of the battery, or to the corresponding engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting the engine

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.

1. Start the engine of the assisting vehicle and let it run for several minutes at an increased idle speed.
2. Start the engine of the vehicle that is to be started in the usual way.

   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before making another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let both engines run for several minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables in the reverse order.

Check the battery and recharge, if needed.

Tow-starting and towing

Safety information

WARNING

Due to system limits, individual functions can malfunction during tow-starting/towing with the Intelligent Safety systems activated. There is a risk of an accident. Switch all Intelligent Safety systems off prior to tow-starting/towing.◀

Manual transmission

Towing or pushing the vehicle

A broken-down vehicle can be towed or pushed.

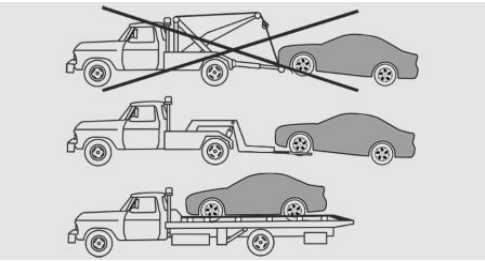
Roll or push, refer to page 94, the vehicle.

Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Make sure that the ignition is switched on; otherwise, the low beams, tail lights, turn signals, and wipers may be unavailable.
- ▷ Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle tilted, as the front wheels could turn.
- ▷ When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist. Consequently, more force needs to be applied when braking and steering.
- ▷ Larger steering wheel movements are required.
- ▷ The towing vehicle must not be lighter than the vehicle being towed; otherwise, it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing speed of 30 mph/50 km/h.
- ▷ Do not exceed a towing distance of 30 miles/50 km.

Tow truck

With rear-wheel drive



Your vehicle should be transported with a tow truck with a so-called lift bar or on a flat bed.

NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

M double-clutch transmission: transporting the vehicle

General information

The vehicle is not permitted to be towed.

Safety information

NOTE

The vehicle can be damaged when towing the vehicle with a single lifted axle. There is a risk of property damage. The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.◀

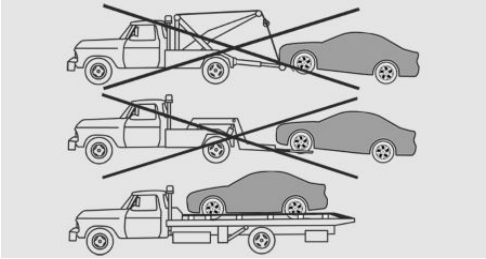
Pushing the vehicle

To remove a broken-down vehicle from the danger area, it can be pushed for a short distance.

Roll or push, refer to page 96, the vehicle.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Tow truck



The vehicle should only be transported on a loading platform.

NOTE

The vehicle can become damaged when lifting and securing it.

There is a risk of damage to property.

- ▷ Lift the vehicle using suitable means.
- ▷ Do not lift or secure the vehicle by its tow fitting, body parts, or suspension parts.◀

Towing other vehicles

General information

Switch on the hazard warning system, depending on local regulations.

If the electrical system has failed, clearly identify the vehicle being towed by placing a sign or a warning triangle in the rear window.

Safety information

WARNING

If the approved gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is lighter than the vehicle to be towed, the tow fitting can tear off or it will not be possible to control the vehicle's response. There is a risk of an accident! Make sure that the gross vehicle weight of the towing vehicle is heavier than the vehicle to be towed.◀

NOTE

If the tow bar or tow rope is attached incorrectly, damage to other vehicle parts can occur. There is a risk of property damage. Correctly attach the tow bar or tow rope to the tow fitting.◀

Tow bar

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles.

Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Maneuvering capability is limited going around corners.
- ▷ The tow bar will generate lateral forces if it is secured with an offset.

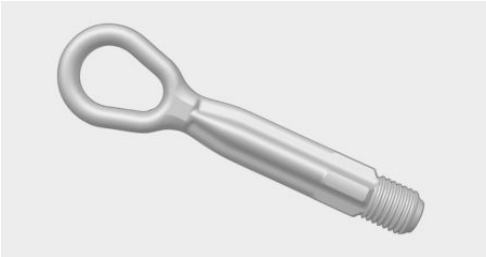
Tow rope

When starting to tow the vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

Use nylon ropes or straps, which will enable the vehicle to be towed without jerking.

Tow fitting

General information



The screw-in tow fitting should always be carried in the vehicle.

The tow fitting can be screwed in at the front or rear of the vehicle.

The tow fitting and the onboard vehicle tool kit, refer to page 212, are together in the cargo area.

Use of the tow fitting:

- ▷ Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in.
- ▷ Use the tow fitting for towing on paved roads only.
- ▷ Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, for instance do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting.

Safety information

NOTE

If the tow fitting is not used as intended, there may be damage to the vehicle or to the tow fitting. There is a risk of damage to property. Observe the notes on using the tow fitting.◀

Screw thread for tow fitting

Press on the mark on the edge of the cover to push it out.

Tow-starting

M double-clutch transmission

Do not tow-start the vehicle.

Tow-starting the engine is not possible due to the M double-clutch transmission.

Have the reasons for the starting difficulties corrected by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Manual transmission

If possible, do not tow-start the vehicle but start the engine by jump-starting, refer to page 220. If the vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter, only tow-start while the engine is cold.

1. Switch on the hazard warning system and comply with local regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 84.
3. Engage third gear.
4. Have the vehicle tow-started with the clutch pedal pressed and slowly release the pedal. After the engine starts, immediately press on the clutch pedal again.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope, and switch off the hazard warning system.
6. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Care

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

Washing the vehicle

General information

Regularly remove foreign objects such as leaves in the area below the windshield when the hood is raised.

Wash your vehicle frequently, particularly in winter. Intense soiling and road salt can damage the vehicle.

Steam blaster and high-pressure washer

Safety information

NOTE

When cleaning with high-pressure washers, components can be damaged due to the pressure or temperatures being too high. There is a risk of property damage. Maintain sufficient distance and do not spray too long continuously. Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure washer.◂

Distances and temperature

- ▷ Maximum temperature: 140 °F/60 °C.
- ▷ Minimum distance from sensors, cameras, seals: 12 inches/30 cm.
- ▷ Minimum distance from glass sunroof: 31.5 in/80 cm.

Automatic vehicle washes

Safety information

NOTE

Water can penetrate in the windshield area due to high-pressure washers. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid high-pressure washers.◂

NOTE

Improper use of automatic vehicle washes can cause damage to the vehicle. There is a risk of damage to property. Follow the following instructions:

- ▷ Give preference to cloth vehicle washes or those that use soft brushes in order to avoid paint damage.
- ▷ Avoid vehicle washes with guide rails higher than 4 in/10 cm to avoid damage to the chassis.
- ▷ Observe the tire width of the guide rail to avoid damage to tires and rims.
- ▷ Fold in exterior mirrors to avoid damage to the exterior mirrors.
- ▷ Deactivate the wiper and, if necessary, rain sensor to avoid damage to the wiper system.◂

Driving into a vehicle wash with a manual transmission

In a vehicle wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Roll or push the vehicle, refer to page 94.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Driving into a vehicle wash with an M double-clutch transmission with Drivelogic

Safety information

NOTE

Selector lever position P is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off. There is a risk of property damage. Do not switch drive-ready state off in vehicle washes.◀

General information

In a vehicle wash, the vehicle must be able to roll freely.

Roll or push the vehicle, refer to page 96.

Driving out of a vehicle wash

Make sure that the remote control is in the vehicle.

Start the engine.

Starting the engine, refer to page 85.

Headlights

Do not rub wet headlights dry and do not use abrasive or acidic cleaning agents.

Soak areas that have been dirtied, for instance from insects, with shampoo and wash off with water.

Thaw ice with de-icing spray; do not use an ice scraper.

After washing the vehicle

After washing the vehicle, apply the brakes briefly to dry them; otherwise, braking action can be reduced. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Completely remove all residues on the windows, to minimize loss of visibility due to smearing and to reduce wiper noises and wiper blade wear.

Vehicle care

Vehicle care products

General information

BMW recommends using vehicle care and cleaning products from BMW. Suitable care products are available from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Safety information

WARNING

Cleansers can contain substances that are dangerous and harmful to your health. There is a risk of injury. When cleaning the interior, open the doors or windows. Only use products intended for cleaning vehicles. Follow the instructions on the container.◀

Vehicle paint

General information

Regular care contributes to driving safety and value retention. Environmental influences in areas with elevated air pollution or natural contaminants, such as tree resin or pollen can affect the vehicle's paintwork. Tailor the frequency and extent of your vehicle care to these influences.

Aggressive substances such as spilled fuel, oil, grease or bird droppings, must be removed immediately to prevent the finish from being altered or discolored.

Matte finish

Only use cleaning and care products suitable for vehicles with matte finish.

Leather care

Remove dust from the leather regularly, using a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Otherwise, particles of dust and road grime chafe in pores and folds, and lead to increased

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

wear and premature degradation of the leather surface.

To guard against discoloration, such as from clothing, clean leather and provide leather care roughly every two months.

Clean light-colored leather more frequently because soiling on such surfaces is substantially more visible.

Use leather care products; otherwise, dirt and grease will gradually break down the protective layer of the leather surface.

Upholstery material care

General information

Vacuum the upholstery regularly with a vacuum cleaner.

If upholstery is very dirty, for instance with beverage stains, use a soft sponge or microfiber cloth with a suitable interior cleaner.

Clean the upholstery down to the seams using large sweeping motions. Avoid rubbing the material vigorously.

Safety information

NOTE

Open Velcro® fasteners on articles of clothing can damage the seat covers. There is a risk of property damage. Ensure that any Velcro® fasteners are closed.◂

Caring for special components

Light-alloy wheels

When cleaning the vehicle, use only neutral wheel cleaners having a pH value from 5 to 9. Do not use abrasive cleaning agents or steam jets above 140 °F/60 °C. Follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Aggressive, acidic or alkaline cleaning agents can destroy the protective layer of adjacent components, such as the brake disc.

After cleaning, apply the brakes briefly to dry them. The heat generated during braking dries brake discs and brake pads and protects them against corrosion.

Chrome surfaces

Carefully clean components such as the radiator grille or door handles with an ample supply of water, possibly with shampoo added, particularly when they have been exposed to road salt.

Rubber components

Environmental influences can cause surface soiling of rubber parts and a loss of gloss. Use only water and suitable cleaning agents for cleaning.

Treat especially worn rubber parts with rubber care agents at regular intervals. When cleaning rubber seals, do not use any silicon-containing vehicle care products in order to avoid damage or noises.

Fine wood parts

Clean fine wood facing and fine wood components only with a moist rag. Then dry with a soft cloth.

Plastic components

NOTE

Cleansers that contain alcohol or solvents, such as lacquer thinners, heavy-duty grease removers, fuel, or such, can damage plastic parts. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a microfiber cloth. Dampen cloth lightly with water.◂

Plastic components are e.g.:

- ▷ Imitation leather surfaces.
- ▷ Roofliner.
- ▷ Lamp lenses.
- ▷ Instrument cluster cover.
- ▷ Matt black spray-coated components.

▷ Painted parts in the interior.

Clean with a microfiber cloth.

Dampen cloth lightly with water.

Do not soak the roofliner.

Safety belts

WARNING

Chemical cleansers can destroy the safety belt webbing. Missing protective effect of the safety belts. There is a risk of injuries or danger to life. Use only a mild soapy solution for cleaning the safety belts.◀

Dirty belt straps impede the reeling action and thus have a negative impact on safety.

Use only a mild soapy solution, with the safety belts clipped into their buckles.

Do not allow the switchs to retract the safety belts until they are dry.

Carpets and floor mats

WARNING

Objects in the driver's floor area can limit the pedal distance or block a depressed pedal. There is a risk of an accident. Stow objects in the vehicle such that they are secured and cannot enter into the driver's floor area. Use floor mats that are suitable for the vehicle and can be safely attached to the floor. Do not use loose floor mats and do not layer several floor mats. Make sure that there is sufficient clearance for the pedals. Ensure that the floor mats are securely fastened again after they were removed, for instance for cleaning.◀

Floor mats can be removed from the car's interior for cleaning.

If the floor carpets are very dirty, clean with a microfiber cloth and water or a textile cleaner. To prevent matting of the carpet, rub back and forth in the direction of travel only.

Sensor/camera lenses

To clean sensors and camera lenses, use a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass detergent.

Displays/screens

NOTE

Chemical cleansers, moisture or fluids of any kind can damage the surface of displays and screens. There is a risk of property damage. Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.◀

NOTE

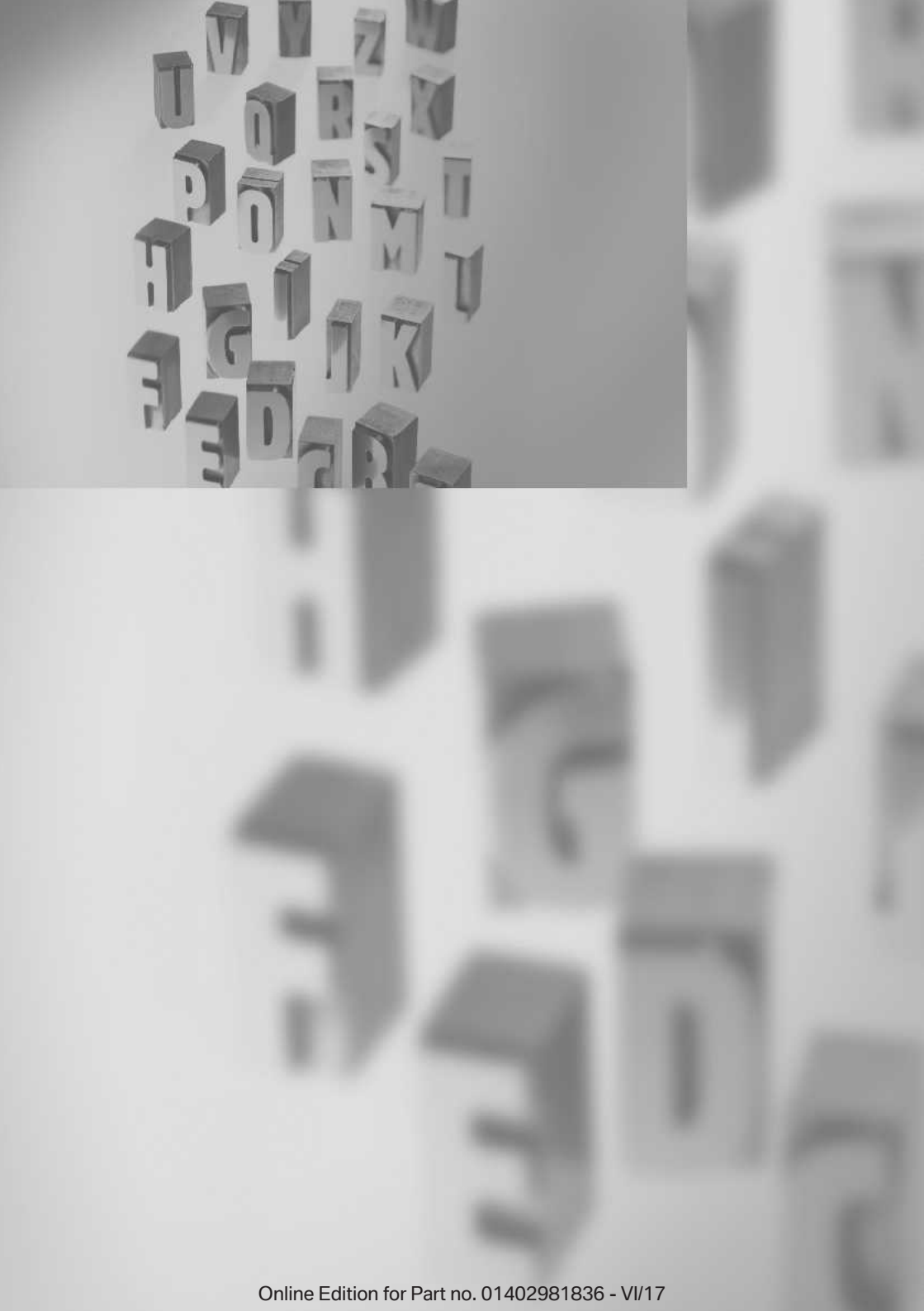
The surface of displays can be damaged with improper cleaning. There is a risk of property damage. Avoid pressure that is too high and do not use any scratching materials.◀

Clean with a clean, antistatic microfiber cloth.

Long-term vehicle storage

When the vehicle is shut down for longer than three months, special measures must be taken. Further information is available from a dealer’s service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17



Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data and an index that will quickly take you to the information you need.

Technical data

Vehicle features and options

This chapter describes all standard, country-specific and optional features offered with the series. It also describes features that are not necessarily available in your vehicle, e. g., due to the selected options or country versions. This also applies to safety-related functions and systems. When using these functions and systems, the applicable laws and regulations must be observed.

General information

The technical data and specifications in this Owner's Manual are used as guidance values. The vehicle-specific data can deviate from this, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, country version or country-specific measurement method. Detailed values can be found in the approval documents, on labels on the vehicle or can be obtained from a dealer's service center or another qualified service center or repair shop.

The information in the vehicle documents always has priority over the information in this Owner's Manual.

Dimensions

The dimensions can vary depending on the model version, equipment or country-specific measurement method.

The specified heights do not take into account attached parts, e.g., a roof antenna, roof racks or spoiler. The heights can deviate, e.g., due to the selected special equipment, tires, load and chassis version.

BMW M2 Coupe		
Width with mirrors	inches/mm	78.1/1,984
Width without mirrors	inches/mm	73/1,854
Height	inches/mm	55.5/1,410
Length	inches/mm	176.2/4,476
Wheelbase	inches/mm	106/2,693
Smallest turning radius diam.	ft/m	38.4/11.7

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Weights

M2		
Approved gross vehicle weight		
Manual transmission	lbs/kg	4,430/2,009
M double-clutch transmission	lbs/kg	4,430/2,009
Load	lbs/kg	840/381
Approved front axle load	lbs/kg	2,140/971
Approved rear axle load	lbs/kg	2,380/1,080
Approved roof load capacity	lbs/kg	165/75

Capacities

	US gal/liters	Notes
Fuel tank, approx.	13.7/52.0	Fuel quality, refer to page 186

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Appendix

Any updates to the Owner's Manual of the vehicle are listed here.

Updates made after the editorial deadline

These chapters of the printed Owner's Manual contain updates made after the editorial deadline.

- ▷ Information: vehicle identification number, refer to page 12.
- ▷ Safety: approach control warning with city light braking function.

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Everything from A to Z

Index

A

ABS, Antilock Brake System 135
Acceleration Assistant, see Launch Control 98
Accessories and parts 8
Activated-charcoal filter 154
Activation times, parked-car ventilation 155
Active M differential 137
Adaptive brake lights, see Brake force display 133
Adaptive Light Control 114
Additives, oil 206
After washing vehicle 226
Airbags 117
Airbags, indicator/warning light 118
Air circulation, see Recirculated-air mode 149, 153
Air conditioning 149, 152
Air, dehumidifying, see Air conditioning 149, 152
Air distribution, manual 150, 153
Air flow, air conditioner 150
Air flow, automatic climate control 153
Air pressure, tires 188
Air vents, see Ventilation 154
Alarm system 61
Alarm, unintentional 62
All-season tires, see Winter tires 193
Alternative oil types 206
Ambient light 116
Antifreeze, washer fluid 93
Antilock Brake System, ABS 135
Anti-slip control, see DSC 135
Anti-theft protection, lug bolts 198
App, BMW Driver's Guide 6
Approved axle load 233
Apps, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Arrival time 110
Ashtray 161
Assistance when driving off 139
Attentiveness assistant 133
AUTO intensity 153
Automatic climate control 148
Automatic climate control with enhanced features 151
Automatic Curb Monitor 76
Automatic deactivation, Front-seat passenger airbags 119
Automatic headlight control 113
Automatic locking 61
Automatic recirculated-air control 153
Automatic vehicle wash 225
AUTO program, automatic climate control 152
AUTO program, climate control 149
AUTO program, intensity 153
Auto Start/Stop function 86
Auto washing 225
AUX-IN port, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Average fuel consumption 109
Average speed 109
Axle loads, weights 233

B

Backrest curvature, see Lumbar support 69
Backrest, width 70
Band-aids, see First-aid kit 220
Battery replacement, vehicle battery 215
Battery replacement, vehicle remote control 52
Battery, vehicle 215
Being towed, see Tow-starting and towing 222
Belts, safety belts 71
Beverage holder, cup holder 167
Bluetooth connection 37
Blu-ray, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
BMW Assist, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
BMW Driver's Guide app 6
BMW Homepage 6
BMW Internet page 6
BMW maintenance system 210
BMW M technology 172
Bottle holder, see Cup holder 167
Brake assistant 135
Brake discs, break-in 173
Brake force display 133

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Brake lights, brake force display 133
Brake pads, break-in 173
Braking, information 175
Breakdown assistance 218, 219
Break-in 173
Brightness of Control Display 34
Bulb replacement 212
Bulb replacement, front 213
Bulb replacement, rear 214
Bulbs and lights 212
Button, Start/Stop 84
Bypassing, see Jump-starting 220

C

Calendar, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
California Proposition 65 Warning 8
Calling up mirror adjustment 61
Calling up seat adjustment 61
Camera-based assistance systems, see Intelligent Safety 125
Camera lenses, care 228
Camera, rearview camera 145
Can holder, see Cup holder 167
Care, displays 228
Care, vehicle 226
Care, washing the vehicle 225
Cargo 177
Cargo area 163
Cargo area, enlarging 163
Cargo area, loading 178
Cargo area, storage compartments 168
Cargo, stowing and securing 178
Carpet, care 228
Catalytic converter, see Hot exhaust system 174
CBS Condition Based Service 210
CD/multimedia, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
CD, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Center armrest 166
Center console 18
Central Information Display (CID), see Control Display 20
Central locking system 54
Central screen, see Control Display 20
Changes, technical, see For Your Own Safety 7
Changing parts 212
Changing wheels 197
Changing wheels/tires 192
Chassis number, see Vehicle identification number 12
Check Control 99
Checking the oil level electronically 204
Children, seating position 79
Children, transporting safely 79
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 81
Child restraint system 79
Child restraint systems, mounting 80
Child seat, mounting 80
Child seats 79
Chrome parts, care 227
Cigarette lighter 161
Cleaning, displays 228
Climate control 148, 151
Clothes hooks 168
Cockpit 16
Combination switch, see Turn signals 89
Combination switch, see Wiper system 90
Comfort Access 55
COMFORT program, driving dynamics 139
Compartments in the doors 166
Compass 159
Compatible devices, see Suitable devices 37
Compound brake 172
Compressor 193
Computer, see Onboard Computer 108
Concierge Service, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Condensation on windows 154
Condensation under the vehicle 176
Condition Based Service CBS 210
Confirmation signal 61
ConnectedDrive, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
ConnectedDrive Services
Connecting device 36
Connecting mobile phone 36
Connecting smartphone 36
Connecting telephone 36
Connections 36
Contacts, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Container for washer fluid 93
Control Display 20
Control Display, settings 32
Controller 21

Control systems, driving stability 135
Convenient opening with the remote control 51
Coolant 208
Cooling, maximum 152
Cooling system 208
Corrosion on brake discs 175
Cosmetic mirror 161
Coupling, see Pairing 36
Courtesy lights during unlocking 51
Courtesy lights with the vehicle locked 51
Cruise control 140
Cruise control without distance control, see cruise control 140
Cruising range 104
Cup holder 167
Current fuel consumption 104

D

Damage, tires 191
Data memory 9
Data protection, settings 35
Data, technical 232
Date 33
Date display 104
Daytime running lights 114
Defrosting, see defrosting the windows 150
Defrosting, see Windows, defrosting 154
Defrosting the windows 150
Dehumidifying, air 149, 152
Deleting personal data 35
Deletion of personal data 35
Destination distance 109
Device list 36
Differential lock 137
Digital clock 104
Digital compass 159
Dimensions 232
Dimmable exterior mirrors 76
Dimmable interior mirror 77
Direction indicator, see Turn signals 89
Display, engine temperature 109
Display lighting, see Instrument lighting 115
Displays, care 228
Disposal, coolant 209
Disposal, vehicle battery 216
Distance control, see PDC 142
Distance to destination 109
Divided screen view, split screen 27
Double-clutch transmission 94
Drivelogic 97
Drive mode 96
Drive-off assistant 139
Drive-off assistant, see DSC 135
Driver assistance, see Intelligent Safety 125
Driver profiles 58
Driver profiles, exporting profiles 59
Driver profiles, importing profiles 60
Driver’s Guide app, see BMW Driver’s Guide app 6
Driving Assistant, see Intelligent Safety 125
Driving Dynamics Control 137
Driving instructions, break-in 173
Driving mode 137
Driving notes, general 174
Driving on racetracks 172
Driving program, see Drivelogic 97
Driving stability control systems 135
Driving tips 174
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 135
DVD, Video, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 135

E

EfficientDynamics 104
Electronic oil measurement 204
Electronic Stability Program ESP, see DSC 135
e-mail, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Emergency release, fuel filler flap 185
Emergency Request 218
Emergency service, see Breakdown assistance 219
Emergency service, see Roadside Assistance 219
Emergency unlocking, tailgate 58
Energy Control 104
Energy recovery 104
Engine, automatic Start/Stop function 86
Engine, automatic switch-off 86
Engine compartment 202
Engine compartment, working in 202
Engine coolant 208
Engine oil 204
Engine oil, adding 205
Engine oil additives 206
Engine oil change 206
Engine oil filler neck 205
Engine oil types, alternative 206
Engine oil types, suitable 206

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Engine start, jump-starting 220
Engine start, see Starting the engine 85
Engine stop 86
Engine temperature, display 109
Entering a destination, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Entering an address, navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication 6
Entering a vehicle wash 225
Equipment, interior 157
Error displays, see Check Control 99
ESP Electronic Stability Program, see DSC 135
Exchanging wheels/tires 192
Exhaust system 174
Exiting a vehicle wash 225
Exterior mirror, automatic dimming feature 76
Exterior mirrors 75
Exterior mirrors, malfunction 76
External start 220
External temperature display 103
External temperature warning 103

F

Failure message, see Check Control 99
False alarm, see Unintentional alarm 62
Fan, see Air flow 150, 153
Filler neck for engine oil 205
Finding charging stations, see Charging stations and points of interest, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Fine wood, care 227
First-aid kit 220
Flat tire, changing wheels 197
Flat tire message, FTM 125
Flat tire message, TPM 122
Flat Tire Monitor FTM 124
Flat tire, repairing 193
Flat tire, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 120
Flat tire warning light, FTM 125
Flat tire warning light, TPM 122
Flooding 174
Floor carpet, care 228
Floor mats, care 228
Fogged up windows 150
Fold-away position, wiper 92
Fold back rear seat backrests 163
Foot brake 175
For Your Own Safety 7
Front airbags 117
Front-end collision warning with City Braking function 126
Front lights 213
Front-seat passenger airbags, automatic deactivation 119
Front-seat passenger airbags, indicator lamp 120
FTM Flat Tire Monitor 124
Fuel 186
Fuel cap 184
Fuel consumption, see Average fuel consumption 109
Fuel filler flap 184
Fuel gauge 103
Fuel quality 186
Fuel recommendation 186
Fuel, tank capacity 233
Fuse 216

G

Garage door opener, see Universal Integrated Remote Control 157
Gasoline 186
Gear change 97
Gear shift indicator 106
General driving notes 174
General settings 32
Glare shield 161
Glass sunroof, electric 64
Glass sunroof, initialize the system 65
Glove compartment 165
GPS geolocation, vehicle position 33
GPS, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Gross vehicle weight, approved 233
Ground clearance 176

H

Handbrake, see parking brake 89
Hand-held transmitter, alternating code 158
Hands-free kit, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hazard warning flashers 218
Head airbags 117
Headlamps 213
Headlight control, automatic 113
Headlight courtesy delay feature 113
Headlight flasher 90
Headlight glass 213
Headlights, care 226
Head restraints, front 72

Head restraints, rear 73
Heavy cargo, stowing cargo 178
High-beam Assistant 114
High beams 90
High beams/low beams, see High-beam Assistant 114
Higher speed range 176
High-performance engine 172
Hills 175
Hill start assistant, see Drive-off assistant 139
Holder for beverages 167
Homepage 6
Hood 202
Horn 16
Hotel function, tailgate 57
Hot exhaust system 174
Hotline, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Hydroplaning 174

I

Ice warning, see External temperature warning 103
Icy roads, see External temperature warning 103
Identification marks, tires 189
Identification number, see Vehicle identification number 12
iDrive 20
Ignition off 84
Ignition on 84
Indicator and warning lights, see Check Control 99
Indicator light, see Check Control 99
Individual air distribution 150, 153
Individual settings, see driver profiles 58
Inductive charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Inflation pressure, tires 188
Inflation pressure warning, tires 124
Info Display, see Onboard Computer 108
Information 6
Initialize, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Initializing, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 125
Instrument cluster 99
Instrument lighting 115
Integrated key 53
Integrated Owner's Manual in the vehicle 45
Intelligent emergency call 218
Intelligent Safety 125
Intended use 7
Intensity, AUTO program 153
Interior equipment 157
Interior lights 115
Interior lights during unlocking 51
Interior lights with the vehicle locked 51
Interior mirror 75
Interior mirror, automatic dimming feature 77
Interior mirror, compass 159
Interior mirror, manually dimmable 77
Interior motion sensor 62
Internet connection 40
Internet hotspot 40
Internet page 6
Interval display, service requirements 105
Interval mode 91
In the vicinity of the center console 18
In the vicinity of the roof-liner 19
In the vicinity of the steering wheel 16

J

Jacking points for the vehicle jack 199
Jam protection system, glass sunroof 65
Jump-starting 220

K

Keyless Go, see Comfort Access 55
Key, mechanical 53
Key, see Remote control 50
Knee airbag 118

L

Label on recommended tires 192
Lamp replacement, front 213
Lamp replacement, rear 214
Lane departure warning 132
Lane threshold, warning 132
Language, on the Control Display 32
LATCH child restraint fixing system 81
Launch Control 98
Leather, care 226
LEDs, light-emitting diodes 213
Light 112
Light-alloy wheels, care 227
Light control 114
Light-emitting diodes, LEDs 213
Lighting 112
Light replacement 212

Lights and bulbs 212
Light switch 112
List of all messages 34
Load 178
Loading 177
Location, vehicle position 33
Locking, automatic 61
Locking, settings 60
Low beams 112
Low beams, automatic, see High-beam Assistant 114
Lower back support 69
Low Speed Assistant 95
Lug bolt lock 198
Luggage rack, see Roof-mounted luggage rack 178
Lumbar support 69

M

Maintenance 210
Maintenance requirements 210
Maintenance, service requirements 105
Maintenance system, BMW 210
Make-up mirror 161
Malfunction displays, see Check Control 99
Manual air distribution 150, 153
Manual air flow 150, 153
Manual operation, fuel filler flap 185
Manual transmission 94
Map update, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Matte finish 226
Maximum cooling 152
Maximum speed, display 106
Maximum speed, winter tires 193
M Compound brake 172
M differential, active 137
MDM, M Dynamic Mode 136
M double-clutch transmission 94
M Driver's Package, driving instructions 176
M Dynamic Mode MDM 136
Measurement, units of 33
Medical kit 220
Memory function 74
Menu in instrument cluster 108
Menus 22
Menus, operating, iDrive 20
Messages 34
Messages, see Check Control 99
Microfilter 150, 154
Minimum tread, tires 191
Mirror 75
Mirror, see Memory function 74
Mobile communication devices in the vehicle 174
Mobility System 193
Modifications, technical, see For Your Own Safety 7
Moisture in headlight 213
Monitor, see Control Display 20
Mounting of child restraint systems 80
MP3 player, see Audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
M technology 172
Multifunction steering wheel, buttons 16
Music hard disk, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

N

Navigation, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Neck restraints, front, see Head restraints 72
Neck restraints, rear, see Head restraints 73
Neutral cleaner, see Wheel cleaner 227
New wheels and tires 192
Notes, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

O

OBD Onboard Diagnosis 211
OBD, see OBD Onboard Diagnosis 211
Obstacle marking, rearview camera 146
Octane rating, see Recommended fuel grade 187
Odometer 103
Office, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Oil 204
Oil, adding 205
Oil additives 206
Oil change 206
Oil change interval, service requirements 105
Oil filler neck 205
Oil types, alternative 206
Oil types, suitable 206
Old batteries, disposal 216
Onboard Computer 108
Onboard vehicle tool kit 212
Online Entertainment, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

Opening and closing 50
Operating concept, iDrive 20
Operating via iDrive 22
Operating with the Controller 22
Operation via touchscreen 24
Optional equipment 7
Outside air, see Automatic recirculated-air control 153

P

Paint, vehicle 226
Panic alarm, see Panic mode 62
Panic mode 62
Park Distance Control PDC 142
Parked-car ventilation 155
Parked vehicle, condensation 176
Parking aid, see PDC 142
Parking brake 89
Parking lights 112
Parts and accessories 8
Passenger's side mirror, tilting downward 76
Pathway lines, rearview camera 146
PDC Park Distance Control 142
Personal profile, see driver profiles 58
Person warning with City light braking function 129
Pinch protection system, windows 64
Plastic, care 227
Power failure 216
Power sunroof, glass 64
Power windows 63
Prescribed engine oil types 206
Pressure, tire air pressure 188
Pressure warning, tires 124
Preventing Auto Start Stop 88
Profiles, see driver profiles 58
Programmable memory buttons, iDrive 28
Protective function, glass sunroof 65
Protective function, windows 64
Push-and-turn reel, see Controller 21

R

Racetrack operation 172
Radiator fluid 208
Radio-operated remote control, opening/closing 50
Radio-ready state 84
Radio, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Rain sensor 91
Rear lights 214
Rear socket 162
Rearview camera 145
Rear window defroster 150, 154
Recirculated-air filter 154
Recirculated-air mode 149, 153
Recommended fuel grade 187
Recommended tire brands 192
Refueling 184
Remaining range 104
Remote control, additional 52
Remote control for audio, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Remote control, integrated key 53
Remote control, loss 52
Remote control, malfunction 53
Remote control, opening/closing 50
Remote control, universal 157
Remote services, App, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Replacing parts 212
Replacing wheels/tires 192
Reporting safety malfunctions 12
RES button, see Cruise control 140
Reserve warning, see Range 104
Reset, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 121
Retreaded tires 193
Roadside Assistance 219
Roadside Assistancee, see Breakdown assistance 219
Roadside parking lights 112
Rolling code hand-held transmitter 158
RON recommended fuel grade 187
Roofliner 19
Roof load capacity 233
Roof-mounted luggage rack 178
Route, navigation, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
RTTI, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Rubber components, care 227

S

Safe braking 175

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and front passenger seat 72
Safety belts 71
Safety belts, care 228
Safety belts, see Safety belts 71
Safety systems, airbags 117
Saving fuel 180
Screen, see Control Display 20
Screwdriver, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 212
Sealant, see Mobility System 193
Seat heating, front 70
Seating position for children 79
Seat, see Memory function 74
Securing cargo 178
Selection list in instrument cluster 108
Selector lever 95
Selector lever position 95
Sensors, care 228
Sequential mode 96
Service and warranty 8
Service requirements, Condition Based Service CBS 210
Service requirements, display 105
Services, ConnectedDrive
Servotronic 137
SET button, see Cruise control 140
Settings, locking/unlocking 60
Settings on the Control Display 32
Shift paddles on the steering wheel 97
Side airbags 117
Signaling, horn 16
Signals when unlocking 61
Sitting safely 67
Size 232
Slide/tilt glass roof 64
SMS, see Short messages, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
SMS text message, supplementary 103
Snow chains 197
Socket 162
Socket, OBD Onboard Diagnostics 211
Software update 43
SOS button 218
Sound output, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Speed, average 109
Speed Limit Info 106
Speed Limit Info, Onboard Computer 110
Speed limits, display 106
Speed warning 110
Split screen 27
SPORT+ - program, driving dynamics 138
Sport displays, torque display, performance display 110
SPORT program, driving dynamics 138
Stability control systems 135
Standard equipment 7
Start/stop, automatic function 86
Start/Stop button 84
Starting the engine 85
Stations, AM/FM, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Status control display, tires 121
Status information, iDrive 27
Status of Owner's Manual 7
Status, vehicle 111
Steering assistance 137
Steering wheel, adjusting 77
Steering wheel heating 78
Stopping the engine 86
Storage compartment in the rear 167
Storage compartments 165
Storage, tires 193
Storing the vehicle 228
Stowing and securing cargo 178
Suitable devices 37
Suitable engine oil types 206
Suitable mobile phones 37
Summer tires, tread 191
Sun visor 161
Supplementary SMS text message 103
Switch for driving dynamics 137
Switch, see Cockpit 16
Symbols 6
Symbols in the status field 27

T

Tachometer 103
Tailgate closing 57
Tailgate, emergency unlocking 58
Tailgate, hotel function 57
Tailgate opening 57
Tailgate via remote control 51
Tail lamps 214
Technical changes, see For Your Own Safety 7
Technical data 232
Technology, BMW M 172
Telephone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication

Teleservices, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Television, TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Temperature, automatic climate control 149, 151
Temperature display for external temperature 103
Temperature, engine 109
Terminal, starting aid 221
Theft alarm system, see Alarm system 61
Thigh support 69
Through-loading system 163
Tilt alarm sensor 62
Time 32
Time of arrival 110
Tire damage 191
Tire identification marks 189
Tire inflation pressure 188
Tire inflation pressure monitor, see FTM 124
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 120
Tire repair kit, see Mobility System 193
Tires, changing 192
Tire sealant, see Mobility System 193
Tires, everything on wheels and tires 188
Tire tread 191
Tone, see Owner's Manual for Navigation, Entertainment and Communication
Tool 212
Total vehicle weight 233
Touchpad 26
Touchscreen 24
Towing 222
Tow-starting 222
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 120
Traffic bulletins, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Transmission, manual transmission 94
Transporting children safely 79
Tread, tires 191
Trip computer 110
Triple turn signal activation 89
Trip odometer 103
Trip recorder, see Trip odometer 103
Trunk, emergency unlocking 58
Turning radius lines, rearview camera 146
Turn signals, operation 89
Turn signals, rear, bulb replacement 214
TV, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

U

Unintentional alarm 62
Units of measurement 33
Universal remote control 157
Unlocking, settings 60
Updates made after the editorial deadline 7
Upholstery care 227
USB connection 39
USB interface, position in vehicle 163
USB port, see USB interface 163
Use, intended 7

V

Vanity mirror 161
Vehicle battery 215
Vehicle battery, replacing 215
Vehicle, break-in 173
Vehicle care 226
Vehicle care products 226
Vehicle features and options 7
Vehicle identification number 12
Vehicle jack 199
Vehicle paint 226
Vehicle position, vehicle location 33
Vehicle status 111
Vehicle storage 228
Vehicle wash 225
Vehicle, washing 225
Ventilation 154
Ventilation, see Parked-car ventilation 155
VIN, see Vehicle identification number 12
Voice activation system 29
Voice command response, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6

W

Warning and indicator lights, see Check Control 99
Warning displays, see Check Control 99
Warning messages, see Check Control 99
Warning triangle 220
Warranty 8
Washer fluid 93
Washer nozzles, windshield 92
Washer system 90

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17

Washing the vehicle 225
Water on roads 174
Weights 233
Welcome lamps 113
Welcome lights during unlocking 51
Wheel cleaner 227
Wheels, changing 192
Wheels, everything on wheels and tires 188
Wheels, Flat Tire Monitor FTM 124
Wheels, Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 120
WiFi connection 40
Window defroster, rear 150, 154
Windows, powered 63
Windshield washer fluid 93
Windshield washer nozzles 92
Windshield washer system 90
Windshield washer system, see Washer/wiper system 90
Windshield wiper, see Wiper system 90
Winter storage, care 228
Winter tires, suitable tires 193
Winter tires, tread 191
Wiper 90
Wiper blades, replacing 212
Wiper fluid 93
Wiper, fold-away position 92
Wiper system 90
Wireless charging dock, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wireless charging, see Wireless charging, see Owner's Handbook for Navigation, Entertainment, Communication 6
Wood, care 227
Word match concept, navigation 24
Wrench, see Onboard vehicle tool kit 212

BMW M

The Ultimate
Driving Machine®

01402981836 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01402981836 - VI/17